

C H I N E S E

FLAMRIC

VOLUME 4

CHINESE READER

Lessons 1-10

AUGUST 1981

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE  
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER

## PREFACE

Volumes 4 and 5 of the Chinese-Mandarin FLAMRIC consist of the PRC produced Chinese Reader (CR) HAN YU DU BEN Part 1, the accompanying DLIFLC produced workbooks Volumes 1 and 2 and three cassette tapes. Volume 4 consists of lessons 1-10, and Volume 5 consists of lessons 11-18. As not all terms introduced in the translation exercises are listed in the glossary/index of the Manual of Administration, HAN YING CI DIAN has been included in the FLAMRIC materials for your reference.

### Organization of Material.

Each lesson consists of the following: Basic text, new vocabulary listing, grammar notes, exercises, study resources, reading comprehension practice exercises with answer keys, and translation exercises with key-model translations. Additionally, comprehensive grammar quizzes with answer sheets listing the appropriate ECR or CR chapter references for each test item are included in the Manual of Administration.

### Basic Text.

The first section of each lesson is the Basic text written in characters. The text may include characters which have not yet been introduced in FLAMRIC materials. These new characters will be listed in the New Words or New Characters and Terms Listings. Others are combinations that are recognizable from their component parts or new usage of previously taught vocabulary. These are included in the Familiar Character Listing. Additional vocabulary is also listed.

### Grammar Notes.

Grammar notes are provided for each lesson. In some cases, the English translation of the Chinese may be somewhat stilted, but the explanation is usually clear from the examples provided.

### Exercises.

Exercises include practice phrases, sentence completion using new vocabulary and grammar, and English to Chinese translations. You may check your completion and translation exercises against the models provided in the Basic Text, Study Resources, Reading Comprehension and Translation exercises.

#### Study Resources.

The Study Resources include a "required" vocabulary list including familiar characters in known terms, new characters and terms, familiar character in new terms, additional vocabulary, and proper name listing. These resources provide new vocabulary in addition to that presented after the Basic text and models of grammar and vocabulary usage (both new and familiar). They can be used to check your practice exercises by comparing your grammar/vocabulary usage to that provided in the examples.

#### Practice Exercises.

Practice exercises include reading comprehension and translation exercises with answer keys and model translations. The reading comprehension exercise is designed to help you learn to grasp the overall meaning of a sentence/paragraph, extracting the main ideas -- essential elements of information. The purpose of translation exercises is to provide a good, idiomatic, easily understood English translation. Your translation may not be identical to the model, yet still be correct as long as it conveys the same meaning.

#### Practice Quizzes.

Nine practice quizzes and their answer keys are provided in the Manual of Administration. Specific instructions for the use of these quizzes are provided in the Manual.

NOTE: The content of this volume was extracted from different instructional manuals and, consequently, the form, style, and format differ from section to section.

## EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. This textbook has been compiled for the use of foreign students who study Chinese in Beijing Languages Institute and of students abroad as well.
2. The textbook aims at training students in practical skills. In compiling the book, we have made every effort to observe the following principles: teach the language in a logical order and advance step by step. In the first ten lessons on phonetics we try to arrange the phonetics as systematically as possible through dialogues, without neglecting drills on the initials, finals and tones of single characters. From Lesson 11 on, we give a number of common sentence patterns in each lesson to illustrate certain grammar points which are to be mastered through substitution drills, and the texts will help students express themselves in connected speech. In each lesson we also provide brief notes on grammar and words and phrases.
3. Each lesson contains a great number of exercises which can be used either as homework or as exercises in class. From Lesson 11 on, there is a review after every three lessons which consists of either a text and some exercises or a summary of grammar points taught in the preceding lessons.
4. In the book, we have adopted all the simplifications of Chinese characters which have been officially published and are in common use. For the convenience of learners abroad, the original complicated form of each simplified Chinese character appearing for the first time is given in the table of Chinese characters for each lesson.
5. The compilers (Li Pei-yuan, Ren Yuan, Zhao Shu-hua, Liu She-hui, Liu Shan, Shao Pei-zhen, Wang Yan-nong and Lai Si-ping), the translator (He Pei-hui) and the illustrator (Jin Ting-ting) sincerely expect the users of this textbook to inform us of their opinions and suggestions.

## 说 明

1. 本书是北京语言学院外国留学生学习汉语所用的教材,也适合于一般外国人学习汉语使用。
2. 本书着重培养学生实际使用汉语的能力。编写中力求贯彻循序渐近,由浅入深的原则。教语音的前十课,尽量按汉语语音系统,把会话练习和声、韵、调的单项训练结合起来。从第十一课起,以常用句型为重点,通过替换练习使学生掌握语法点,通过课文训练学生综合运用汉语的技能。课文后边有语法和词语的简要注释。
3. 每课后都有一定数量的练习材料,这些练习材料,可作为课外作业,也可以在课堂上使用。第十一课以后,每三课有一课复习,通过课文和练习或者语法总结,复习巩固已学的生词和语法。
4. 本书采用中国正式推行的三批简化汉字。考虑到国外学习者的方便,我们对每课汉字表中的简化字注出了繁体字。
5. 本书编者:李培元、任远、赵淑华、刘社会、刘山、邵佩珍、王砚农、来思平。英文翻译:何培慧。插图:金亭亭。希望读者对本书提出批评意见。

编者 1979年3月

CONTENTS

Lesson 1, Tian Men Square . . . . .	1
Lesson 2, The Eighth Route . . . . .	26
Lesson 3, Donkey and Tiger . . . . .	54
Lesson 4, The Calf and I . . . . .	81
Lesson 5, Farmhand House . . . . .	120
Lesson 6, Mr. Dongguo and the Wolf . . . . .	154
Lesson 7, Liu Hu Lan . . . . .	189
Lesson 8, The Silk Route . . . . .	231
Lesson 9, New Look of Tea Producing District . . . . .	259
Lesson 10, The Great Wall . . . . .	294



多人到这里来参观，他们中间有全国各地的工人、农民、解放军、干部和学生，还有许多爱国侨胞。首都人民还经常在这里举行盛大集会和各种庆祝活动。

## 第一课 天安门

天安门位于北京的中心。天安门城楼高三十多米，城楼上高悬着中华人民共和国国徽，城墙正中挂着毛泽东主席的画像。巍峨的建筑，金色的屋顶，红色的城墙，显得非常庄严雄伟。

一九四九年十月一日，在天安门广场举行了中华人民共和国开国典礼。毛主席在天安门城楼上庄严宣告了中华人民共和国的成立，亲手升起了第一面五星红旗。中国人民从此站立起来了！

解放以后，天安门广场进行了扩建。扩建以后的广场比原来大三倍，可以容纳几十万人。广场中央屹立着人民英雄纪念碑，东西两边修建了中国历史博物馆和人民大会堂。天安门广场变得更加雄伟壮丽了。

中国人民非常热爱天安门，每天都有很

### 生词 New words

- |        |                |                                     |
|--------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. 位于  | wèiyú          | to be situated, to stand            |
| 2. 中心  | (名) zhōngxīn   | centre                              |
| 3. 城楼  | (名) chénglóu   | tower over a city gate, rostrum     |
| 4. 悬   | (动) xuán       | to hang (up)                        |
| 5. 国徽  | (名) guóhuī     | national emblem                     |
| 6. 正中  | (名) zhèngzhōng | exactly in the middle               |
| 7. 挂   | (动) guà        | to hang (up)                        |
| 8. 画像  | (名) huàxiàng   | portrait                            |
| 9. 巍峨  | (形) wēié       | lofty                               |
| 10. 金色 | (名) jīnsè      | golden                              |
| 11. 屋顶 | (名) wūdǐng     | roof                                |
| 12. 显得 | (动) xiǎndé     | to look, to appear to be            |
| 13. 庄严 | (形) zhuāngyán  | solemn                              |
| 14. 雄伟 | (形) xióngwěi   | imposing, magnificent               |
| 15. 开国 | kāi guó        | founding of the state, inauguration |

16. 典礼	(名) diǎnlǐ	ceremony
17. 宣告	(动) xuāngào	to proclaim, to declare
18. 亲手	qīn shǒu	with one's own hand
19. 升	(动) shēng	to raise
20. 星	(名) xīng	star
21. 旗	(名) qí [面]	flag, banner
22. 从此	(副) cóngcǐ	from that time on, henceforth
23. 扩建	(动) kuòjiàn	to expand, expansion
24. 原来	(形) yuánlái	before, originally
25. 倍	(量) bèi	(so many) times, -fold
26. 容纳	(动) róngnà	to hold, to contain
27. 万	(数) wàn	ten thousand
28. 中央	(名) zhōngyāng	centre
29. 屹立	(动) yìlì	to stand rock-firm and towering
30. 更加	(副) gèngjiā	even more
31. 壮丽	(形) zhuànglì	grand, magnificent
32. 中间	(名) zhōngjiān	in the midst of, among, between
33. 爱	(动) ài	to love, to be fond of, to like
34. 侨胞	(名) qiáobāo	fellow countrymen overseas

35. 盛大	(形) shèngdà	grand
36. 集会	(名) jíhuì	mass rally, gathering
37. 庆祝	(动) qīngzhù	to celebrate

专名 Proper names

1. 毛泽东 Máo Zédōng Mao Tsetung
2. 人民大会堂

Rénmín Dà Huitáng the Great Hall of the People

词语例解 Notes

1. 位于

“位于”是书面语，一般用来指国家、地区、山河、城市、大型建筑物等所处的位置。例如：

“位于”，often used in the written language, generally indicates the situation of a country, district, mountain, river, city, big building, etc. E.g.

(1) 人民英雄纪念碑位于天安门广场的中央。

(2) 清华大学位于北京西郊(jiāo, suburban district)。

2. 显得

(1) 他已经五十多岁了，可是还显得很年轻。



(2) 今天天气非常好,天显得特别蓝。

3. 原来

(1) 这个学校原来只有五百学生,现在已经有两千多了。

(2) 他还住在原来的地方。

“原来”作状语,有时是表示发现了以前不知道的情况。例如:

“原来”: when used as an adverbial adjunct, sometimes implies the discovery of something formerly unknown to the speaker. E.g.

(3) 宿舍里一个人也没有,原来同学们都听报告去了。

(4) 这两天我没有看见他,原来他有事到上海去了。

3

### 练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组: Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 举行典礼 举行集会 举行庆祝会  
举行音乐会 举行座谈会  
举行电影招待会
2. 进行扩建 进行斗争 进行研究  
进行讨论
3. 比原来大三倍 比以前多几倍  
四是二的两倍 提高一倍

4. 我们中间 群众中间 这些人中间

在他们中间

二、完成句子: Complete the following sentences:

1. 下过雨以后,树\_\_\_\_\_。(显得)
2. 天安门广场东西两边修建了历史博物馆和人民大会堂,\_\_\_\_\_。(显得)
3. 社员们发现白菜旁边有一封信,\_\_\_\_\_。(原来)
4. 老师没有在家,\_\_\_\_\_。(原来)

三、造句: Make sentences with:

1. 位于
2. 显得
3. 倍
4. 原来

四、把下列句子译成中文,用上括号里的词语: Translate the following into Chinese, using the words and phrases in the brackets: **Use Pinyin and Characters:**

1. The Great Hall of the People is situated on the west of the Tien An Men Square. (位于)
2. He looks a bit displeased. (显得)
3. Our work is going on very fast. (进行)
4. After expansion, this shop is three times bigger than before. (原来)
5. In order to learn Chinese faster, we must work even harder in the future. (更加)



6. 顶 dǐng N: top, tip; wear on the head

屋顶 wūdǐng N: rooftop, roof

a. 北京有不少红色屋顶的建筑。

There are quite a few structures in Beijing with red-colored roofs.

b. 游击队在很高的屋顶上开枪打。

The guerrillas were opening fire with guns from high rooftops.

7. 挂(掛) guà V: hang

a. 我们教室的墙上挂着一张中华人民共和国的地图。

On the wall of our classroom hangs a map of the PRC.

b. 我把衣服都挂起来了。

I have hung up all my clothes.

c. 打完了电话,应该立刻把电话(机)挂上。

After we complete a phone call, we should immediately hang up the telephone.

8. 金 jīn N: gold

金色 jīnsè N: golden colored; gold tint

a. 我不喜欢金色的汽车。

I don't like golden-colored automobiles.

b. 金色的纸叫金纸。

Golden-colored paper is called gold paper.

9. 旗 qí N: flag, banner, pennant (M: 面 miàn)

旗子 qízi N: flag, banner, pennant

国旗 guóqí N: national flag

a. 在美国卖旧汽车的地方,有很多小旗子。

There are many small pennants (hanging) at places in the United States that sell used cars.

b. 现在的美国国旗跟一七七六年的不一样。

The present-day American (national) flag is different from the one in 1776.

10. 升(昇) shēng V: raise, rise
- a. 星期日早上也升旗吗?  
Is the flag also raised on Sunday mornings?
- b. 到了冬天,七点钟以后太阳才升起来。  
When winter comes the sun does not rise until after seven o'clock.
11. 盛 shèng BF: flourishing, prosperous
- 盛大 shèngdà Att: grand, great
- a. 上星期六晚上我们参加了一个盛大的晚会。  
Last Saturday night we attended a grand evening party.
- b. 昨天在人民大会堂举行了盛大招待会。  
A grand reception was held at the Great Hall of the People yesterday.
12. 显(顯) xiǎn BF: show, reveal, indicate
- 显得 xiǎnde (xiǎndé) V: seem, appear (to be), look (like)
- a. 他已经五十多岁了,可是还显得很年轻。  
Although he is over 50, he still seems to be very youthful.
- b. 下过雨以后,树显得更绿了。  
The trees seem to be even greener after the rain.
- c. 他显得有点儿不高兴。  
He appears to be somewhat unhappy.
13. 像 xiàng N/V: portrait; resemble
- 画像 huàxiàng N: portrait (M: 张 or 幅 fú)
- a. 天安门的墙上挂着毛主席的画像。  
Chairman Mao's portrait hangs on the wall of Tian An Men.
- b. 中国每个学校的礼堂都挂着毛主席的画像。  
In China, Chairman Mao's portrait hangs in the auditorium of every school.
- c. 历史博物馆里挂着不少(有)名(的)人的画像。  
Quite a few portraits of famous people hang in the historical museum.

14. 宣 xuān BF: announce  
 宣告 xuāngào V: proclaim, announce
- a. 一九四九年十月一日, 毛主席宣告了中华人民共和国的成立。  
 On 1 October 1949 Chairman Mao proclaimed the founding of the PRC.
- b. 中华人民共和国的成立, 是毛主席在北京天安门宣告的。  
 The establishment of the PRC was proclaimed by Chairman Mao at Tian An Men.

15. 央 yāng BF: center, central  
 中央 zhōngyāng N: center, central
- a. 人民英雄纪念碑在天安门广场的中央。  
 The Monument to the People's Heroes is in the center of Tian An Men Square.
- b. 我小时候常常跟爸爸妈妈到中央公园去玩儿。  
 When I was young, I often went with my parents to play in Central Park.

16. 泽 zé N/BF: marsh  
 毛泽东 Máo Zédōng N: (personal name)
- 中国人民热爱毛泽东。  
 The people of China ardently love Mao Zedong.

C. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

17. 爱国 àiguó SV: patriotic
- a. 人人都应当爱国。  
 Everybody should be patriotic.
- b. 王同志为了打敌人受了重伤, 他的爱国精神真伟大。  
 Comrade Wang was severely injured fighting the enemy. His patriotic spirit is really great.

18. 变成 biànréng V: change to, become
- a. 她从前是我同学, 现在变成我的爱人了。  
Formerly she was my school mate; now she has become my wife.
- b. 广场上有很多金色的旗子, 变成一个金色广场了。  
There are many golden-colored flags in the square, and it has changed to a golden-colored square.
19. 城 chéng N: walled city
- 城楼 chénglóu N: rostrum, tower on the city wall
- 城墙 chéngqiáng N: city wall
- a. 天安门城楼高三十米, 城墙呢?  
Tian An Men Tower is 30 meters tall, how about the city wall?
- b. 北京各城楼都不一样高。  
All the towers on Beijing's city walls are not equally tall.
20. 典礼 diǎnlǐ N: ceremony
- 我爱人要来参加我们的毕业典礼。  
My spouse is going to come to take part in my graduation ceremony.
21. 各地 gèdì N: everywhere, all places
- 国庆节各地都挂着国旗。  
There are national flags hanging everywhere on National Day.
22. 更加 gèngjiā A: even more so
- a. 为了加强中美两国的友谊, 我们应该更加努力。  
In order to strengthen Sino-American friendship, we should work even harder.
- b. 下过雪以后, 我们学校显得更加干净了。  
Our school seems even cleaner after the snow.
23. 集会 jíhuì VO/N: rally, gather; assembly
- a. 首都人民经常在天安门广场举行盛大集会。  
The people at the capital regularly hold great rallies at Tian An Men Square.

- b. 上次参加天安门(前)集会的人,大概有四五千。

Last time there were approximately 4000-5000 people who attended the gathering in front of Tian An Men.

24. 开国 kāiguó

N: founding (of a nation)

开国典礼 kāiguó diǎnlǐ

N: inaugural ceremony (of a nation), founding ceremony

- a. 美国的开国典礼是在哪里举行的?

Where were the founding ceremonies for the United States of America held?

- b. 中国各地都派代表去北京参加新中国的开国典礼。

Delegates from everywhere in China were sent to Beijing to participate in New China's inaugural ceremonies.

25. 扩建 kuòjiàn

N/V: expansion; expand (structurally)

- a. 我们学校扩建以后,显得更加整齐了。

After the expansion our school seems even neater.

- b. 解放后,天安门广场进行了扩建,在广场的东西两边修建了中国历史博物馆和人民大会堂。

After Liberation, expansion was carried out on Tian An Men Square. The Chinese Historical Museum and the Great Hall of the People were built on the east and west sides of the square (respectively).

26. 亲手 qīnshǒu

A: with one's (very) own hands, personally

- a. 毛主席宣告新中国成立时,亲手升起了第一面国旗。

When Chairman Mao proclaimed the establishment of the PRC, he personally raised the first national flag.

- b. 宿舍里的饭没有妈妈亲手做的(那么)好吃。

Dormitory food is not as delicious as food made by my mother's own hands.

27. 庆祝 qìngzhù V/N: celebrate; celebration
- a. 听到抗日战争胜利了, 北京各大学的学生都举行集会庆祝。  
When they heard of the victory in the War of Resistance against Japan, students from all Beijing colleges held rallies to celebrate.
- b. 每年十月一日, 中国各地都举行盛大集会庆祝国庆。  
Each year on October 1, great gatherings are held everywhere in China to celebrate National Day.
- c. 这次的表演成绩不错, 我们应该庆祝一下。  
This performance was pretty good (achieved fairly good results). We should celebrate!

28. 全国 quánguó N: the whole nation, the entire country
- 国庆那天, 全国各地都有庆祝活动。  
On National Day, everywhere in the entire nation there are celebration activities.

29. 人民大会堂 rénmin dàhuìtáng N: Great Hall of the People

30. 位于 wèiyú V: situated at, positioned at (see CR L.1, note #1)
- a. 人民大会堂位于天安门广场的西边。  
The Great Hall of the People is situated on the west side of Tian An Men Square.
- b. 加拿大位于美国的北边。  
Canada is situated to the north of the United States.

31. 雄伟 xióngwěi SV: imposing, magnificent
- a. 金色的屋顶 红色的城墙, 显得非常雄伟。  
The golden rooftops and the red-tinted city wall (make it) seem extraordinarily imposing.
- b. 天安门东西两边建筑了历史博物馆和人民大会堂显得更加雄伟了。  
After the building of the Historical Museum and the Great Hall of the People on the east and west sides of Tian An Men, the place seems even more imposing.



32. 星 xīng

N: star (M: 颗 kē)

五星红旗 wǔxīnghóngqí

N: Five-Star Red Flag (national flag of PRC)

第一面五星红旗是毛主席亲手升起的。

The first Five-Star Red Flag was raised personally by Chairman Mao.

33. 原来 yuánlái

IE: it turns out that ...  
A/SV: original(ly), in the first place  
(see CR L.1, note #3)

- a. 这两天我没看见他,原来他有事到北京去了。

I haven't seen him in the past couple of days; it turns out that he went to Beijing on business.

- b. 那个学校原来有一万多学生,现在比原来多了一倍。

Originally that school had over 10,000 students. Now there are twice as many (as originally).

34. 正中 zhèngzhōng

PW: right in the middle

- a. 天安门城墙正中挂着毛主席的画像。

Right in the middle, on the wall of Tian An Men, hangs Chairman Mao Zedong's portrait.

- b. 现在站在教室正中的那个人是张老师。

The man standing in the center of the classroom is Teacher Zhang.

35. 中间 zhōngjiān

PW: among, between, in the midst of;  
in the center, in the middle

- a. 参加新中国开国典礼的代表真不少,他们中间有工人、农民、解放军干部和学生。

There were innumerable delegates participating in the founding ceremonies of the PRC. Among them were workers, peasants, PLA, cadre, and students.

- b. 我们中间小王的年纪最小。

Little Wang is the youngest among us.

- c. 那张照片上,站在两位战士中间的那个人是毛主席的爱人。

Standing between the two soldiers in that photograph is the spouse of Chairman Mao.

36. 中心 zhōngxīn PW/N: center

a. 天安门位于北京的中心。

Tian An Men is situated in the center of Beijing.

b. 上海是全国的工业中心。

Shanghai is the industrial center of the whole nation.

c. 上海市中心有一座很高的楼, 高三百多米。

In the center of Shanghai there is an extremely tall building.  
It is over 300 meters high.

II. Additional Vocabulary

1. 国徽 guóhuī N: national emblem  
天安门城楼高三十多米，城楼上挂着  
中华人民共和国的国徽。  
Tian An Men Tower is over 30 meters high. At its top  
hangs the national emblem of the PRC.
2. 侨胞 qiáobāo N: expatriates, fellow countrymen  
overseas, overseas Chinese  
一九四九年十月一日，有许多爱国侨胞  
从世界各地来参加中华人民共和国的  
开国典礼。  
On 1 October 1949, there were many patriotic expatriates who  
came from everywhere in the world to participate in the  
founding ceremonies of the PRC.
3. 容纳 róngnà V: hold (contain)  
扩建后的天安门广场可以容纳几十万人。  
Postexpansion Tian An Men Square can hold several hundred  
thousand people.
4. 巍峨 wēi'é SV: lofty  
这些巍峨的建筑都是几百年前修建的。  
All of these lofty structures were built several hundred  
years ago.
5. 悬 xuán V: be suspended, hang  
太阳高悬在天空。  
The sun hangs high in the sky.
6. 屹立 yìlì V: stand towering, tower  
毛主席的画像屹立在天安门的城楼上。  
Chairman Mao's portrait stands towering on Tian An Men rostrum.
7. 庄严 zhuāngyán SV: solemn, somber  
大礼堂挂着毛主席的画像和五星红旗  
显得更加庄严了。  
Chairman Mao's portrait and the Five-Star Red Flag hang in  
the auditorium, (making it) seem even more solemn.

8. 壮丽 zhuànglì SV: grand, magnificent, splendid  
扩建后的广场中央屹立着人民英雄纪念碑, 使广场显得更加雄伟壮丽了。  
The Monument to the People's Heroes stands towering in the center of the enlarged square, causing the square to seem even more magnificent.

Proper Names:

9. 红色广场 Hóngsè Guǎngchǎng PW: Red Square
10. 克里姆林宫 Kèlǐmǔlín Gōng PW: the Kremlin (Palace)
11. 苏联 Sūlián PW: the Soviet Union, USSR

## I. Reading Comprehension.

**INSTRUCTIONS** - Read the passages and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

克里姆林宫 (Kèlǐmǔlín Gōng) 位于 苏联 (Sūlián) 首都的中心。它的那几个城楼又庄严又雄伟。城楼里头的屋顶都是金色的。城楼的正中都挂着红旗和列宁的画像。城楼上都高悬着 苏联 的国徽。

苏联 首都本来是一个小村子。在七百多年以前，才修建了城墙。苏联 首都从此起慢慢开始扩建，到今天它比原来的大了几十倍。今天 克里姆林宫 的墙都是用石头和砖建筑的。这是六百多年以前开始换的。城墙里的很多建筑，有的已经变成了办公室，有的变成了大会堂，还有的变成了博物馆。

在 克里姆林宫 外头有一个世界有名的大广场，叫红色广场。第二次世界大战后进行了扩建。扩建后的红色

广场比原来显得更加壮丽了。现在可以容纳几十万人。每年有盛大集会或者庆祝十月革命典礼的时候，他们都在这个红色广场举行。

苏联的人民非常热爱克里姆林宫和红色广场。每天都有很多人到那里去参观。他们中间有苏联各地来的战士，工人，农民，干部，学生和外国人。

1. Where is the Kremlin?

2. Describe the towers.

3. What is gold colored?

4. What is hung on the middle of the tower?

5. What is hung high atop the towers?

When did they build a wall around the city?

Compared to its original size, how big is the capital now?

What kind of materials were used in the construction of the modern wall?

What was done with the old buildings inside the wall?

What is the name of the world-famous area just outside the Kremlin?

What was done to it after World War II?

What is it like now?

What is its capacity now?

What occasions is this area used for?

What people come here to visit every day?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.

Answer Key:

Score

1. it is situated in the center of the capital of the Soviet Union 7  
<sub>2 2 1 2</sub>
2. they are both solemn and imposing 5  
<sub>1 2 2</sub>
3. the rooftops 2  
<sub>2</sub>
4. red flags and portraits of Lenin 6  
<sub>2 2 2</sub>
5. the national emblem of the Soviet Union 4  
<sub>2 2</sub>
6. more than 700 years ago 3  
<sub>1 1 1</sub>
7. several tens of times as large 4  
<sub>1 2 1</sub>
8. stone and brick 2  
<sub>1 1</sub>
9. some were turned into offices; some were changed into 13  
<sub>1 2 1 1 2</sub>  
assembly halls; and some were converted into museums  
<sub>2 1 2 1</sub>
10. Red Square 2  
<sub>2</sub>
11. it was enlarged 2  
<sub>2</sub>
12. it appears even more magnificent 6  
<sub>2 2 2</sub>
13. it can hold several hundred thousand people 4  
<sub>1 2 1</sub>
14. great rallies or when there is ceremonial activity celebrating the 11  
<sub>2 2 2 1 2</sub>  
October Revolution  
<sub>1 1</sub>
15. among them are soldiers who come from everywhere in the Soviet Union, 12  
<sub>2 1 2 2</sub>  
workers, peasants, cadre, students and foreigners  
<sub>1 1 1 1 1</sub>

---

Total: 83

Passing: 59



I. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. It is recommended that you get in the habit of writing smooth, grammatical English translations instead of choppy word-for-word or literal translations. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." (Note that use of the latter is prohibited in the CRT.) Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

1. 旧社会里,有的  
有钱人的房子  
屋顶很高.客厅  
正面的墙上,正  
中挂着父母的  
画像.

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. 画像多半是儿  
女亲手挂的.画  
像下面放着一  
张金色的长桌  
子,客厅显得很  
庄严.

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. 北京大学原来  
就很大.解放以  
后,进行扩建.扩  
建以后,的北京大  
大学比原来大  
三倍,可以容纳  
三、四万学生.

3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. 庆祝集会的人群  
众中间会有许多  
小学小生手里拿  
着小红旗.红旗七  
寸长一尺,宽七  
寸.

4. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. 昨天有英法两  
国学生到天安  
门参观.他们  
要知道天安  
门解放  
以前是解  
放的.  
以后扩  
建的.

5. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. 中国人民热爱天安门。天安门在北京，中国的首都。天安门是毛主席在天安门城楼上，向全国人民宣布，中华人民共和国成立，升起了第一面五星红旗。

6. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

7. 劳动节，是全国人民共同的节日。今年北京天安门广场，举行了盛大的庆祝活动。因为天安门广场是北京市的中心，所以那里容纳的人最多。

7. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

8. 北京,上海各大  
城市,的中心,都  
有专门为外国  
朋友和侨胞服  
务的商店.从此,  
到中国旅行,的  
外国朋友和侨  
胞,在中国买东  
西就更方便了.

8. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. 昨天首都人民  
在人民大会堂  
举行盛大集会,  
热烈欢迎日本  
代表团.坐在  
主席台上的  
中日代表  
团长.

9. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_





Five-Star Red Flag / of the New China. / (26/36)  
2 2

In recent years, / most of the / Labor Day / celebrations / in Beijing /  
2 2 2 2 1  
were held / simultaneously / in several places. / Tian An Men / Square /  
2 1 1 2 2  
and / the Great Hall of the People / are the centers / of these /  
1 2 2 1  
celebration activities. / This is because / these places / are the largest /  
2 1 1 1  
and can hold / the most people. / (22/31)  
2 1

At the centers / of large cities / such as Beijing / and Shanghai /  
2 1 1 1  
there are / stores / specially / servicing / foreign friends /  
1 1 2 1 2  
and expatriates. / Henceforth, / buying things / (while) in China /  
2 2 1 1  
(will be) even more / convenient / for foreign friends / and expatriates /  
1 1 2 2  
touring / China. / (19/27)  
2 1

Yesterday / the people / of the capital / held / a great / rally /  
1 1 1 2 1 2  
at the Great Hall of the People / to enthusiastically / welcome /  
2 2 1  
the Japanese / delegation. / Sitting / at the center / of the dais /  
2 2 1 2 2  
were the responsible / comrades / of the Chinese Communist (Party) (CCP) /  
2 1 2  
and the head / of the Japanese delegation. / (21/30)  
2 1

The founding / of the PRC / was like / the sun / which just / rose /  
2 1 1 1 1 2  
in the east. / Thenceforth, / the people of China /  
1 2 1  
have stood up (have been independent). / Having gone through / the great /  
2 1 1  
socialist / revolution / and socialist / (re)construction, / China / seems /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
even more / imposing / and magnificent. / (20/28)  
1 2 2

再想办法！”

枪声响了，村子里立刻乱起来，敌人已经进村了。

“出来，出来，都出来！”鬼子砸着每一家的门，大声地喊着，把全村的人往广场上赶。有几个人走得慢，被鬼子打死了。

全村的人都被赶到广场上去了。广场周围架着机枪。鬼子从人群里一连拉出好几个人，又打又骂，问他们谁是八路军。他们都说：“不知道！”敌人没有办法，就强迫男的站在一边，女的站在一边，小孩站在另外一边。几百人都愤怒地看着敌人。一个鬼子大声地对孩子们喊：“你们一个一个地走出来，把自己家里人领回去。不许乱领，谁乱领就打死谁。”又转过身去向大人们说：“不许动！不许说话！要是有人说话，我就开枪！”说完，就注意地看着每一个人。

孩子们一个一个地把自己家里人领了回去。广场上剩下的人不多了。这时候妈妈有些着急了。我看看区长他们，他们却还是很

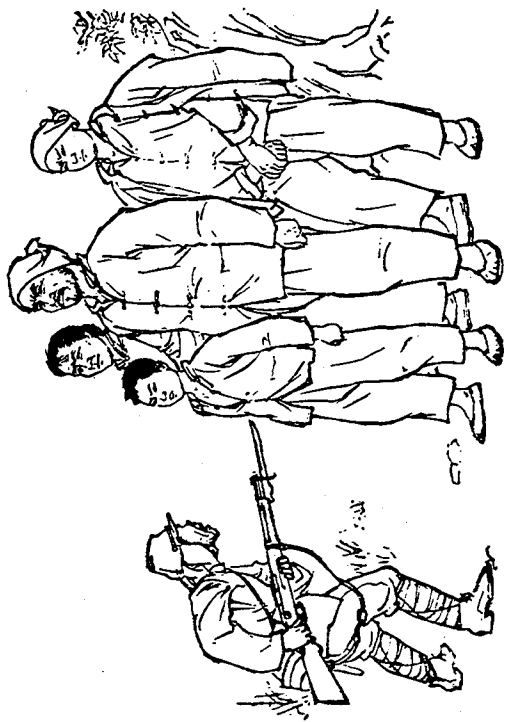
## 第二课 小八路军

抗日战争初期，离我们家不远的几个村子都被日本侵略军占领了。

有一天，区长在我们村里开完会，跟另外一个同志住在我们家里，我非常高兴。晚上，我去找他们玩儿。区长给我讲了很多日本帝国主义侵略中国的罪行。听了以后，我跟区长说，我也要当八路军，打日本鬼子。可是区长说我是孩子，胆子小，当不了八路军。我听了真有点儿不高兴，一夜也没睡好，自己问自己，难道我真胆子小吗？

第二天天还没亮，我睡得正熟，忽然让母亲叫醒了。她很着急地跟我说：“坏了，村子被鬼子包围了。你快去把区长他们叫起来，让他们赶快躲躲。”我立刻跑去叫他们，区长他们也知道了这个消息，正要往外走。妈妈进来说：“现在怎么走得了！快把衣服换下来





镇静地站在那里。我不慌不忙地走到区长跟前说：“爸爸，咱们回去吧！”又走到那个同志跟前说：“哥哥，走吧。”最后我又拉着妈妈的衣服说：“妈妈，咱们回家吧。”

我们正要走，忽然一个鬼子走过来，指着区长他们问我：“你认得他们吗？”我大声地说：“怎么不认得！我爸爸，我哥哥，还有我妈妈。”说完，就领着他们一起走了。

后来，我又问区长：“我可以当八路军了吧？”他拉着我的手说：“你真是一个小八路军！”

## 生词 New words

- |         |                |  |
|---------|----------------|--|
| 1. 初期   | (名) chūqī      | at the beginning, at the initial stage             |
| 2. 离    | (介) lí         | from   |
| 3. 占领   | (动) zhànling   | to occupy  |
| 4. 区    | (名) qū         | district   |
| 5. ...长 | ...zhǎng       | leader (of)  |
| 6. 开(会) | (动) kāi (huì)  | to hold (meeting)                                  |
| 7. 帝国主义 | (名) dìguózhǔyì | imperialism  |
| 8. 罪行   | (名) zuìxíng    | criminal act, crime                                |
| 9. 胆子   | (名) dǎnzi      | courage, pluck (“胆子小” means easily getting scared) |
| 10. 难道  | (副) nándào     | is it possible...? is it conceivable...?           |
| 11. 亮   | (形) liàng      | light, bright (“天亮了” means day breaks)             |
| 12. 正   | (副) zhèng      | just   |
| 13. 熟   | (形) shú        | sound (asleep)                                     |
| 14. 忽然  | (副) hūrán      | suddenly, all of a sudden                          |
| 15. 母亲  | (名) mǔqīn      | mother   |
| 16. 坏了  | huàiliè        | too bad, bad luck                                  |
| 17. 包围  | (动) bāowéi     | to surround, to besiege                            |

18. 躲	(动) duǒ	to hide, to go into hiding, to dodge
19. 消息	(名) xiāoxi	news, information
20. 乱	(形) luàn	to be thrown into confusion, at random
21. 敌人	(名) dírén	enemy
22. 砸	(动) zá	to smash, to strike
23. 周围	(名) zhōuwéi	all around
24. 架	(动) jià	to put up
25. 机枪	(名) jīqiāng [挺 tǐng]	machinegun
26. 群	(名) qún	crowd
27. 拉	(动) lā	to drag, to pull
28. 骂	(动) mà	to curse, to abuse
29. 强迫	(动) qiǎngpò	to force, to compel
30. 男的	nán de	man
31. 一边	(名) yìbiān	one side
32. 女的	nǚ de	woman
33. 愤怒	(形) fènnù	angry, indignant
34. 领	(动) lǐng	to take back, to lead
35. 许	(动) xǔ	to allow
36. 转	(动) zhuǎn	to turn round
37. 夫人	(名) fūrén	grown-up

38. 剩	(动) shèng	to leave
39. 却	(副) què	yet
40. 镇静	(形) zhènjìng	calm
41. 不慌不忙	bùhuāngbùmáng	with composure, calmly
42. 跟前	(名) gēnqián	in front of
43. 指	(动) zhǐ	to point out, to indicate
44. 认得	(动) rèndé	to know, to recognize

### 词语例解 Notes

#### 1. 离

- (1) 我们的宿舍离教室不太远。  
 (2) 现在离上课还有十分钟。  
 (3) 我们常常到离学校不远的工厂去劳动。

#### 2. 难道

“难道”表示反问语气，句尾常有“吗”。例如：

“难道” is often used to form a rhetorical question and there is often “吗” at the end. E.g.

- (1) 难道这一点困难咱们都克服不了吗？

(克服了)

- (2) 难道我们还怕困难吗？(不怕)

某种迹象使人对本来确信的情况产生怀疑，也可以用“难道”提出疑问。例如：

When something happens which makes one doubt his own judgement, "难道" is often used to form a question. E.g.

(3) 他现在还不回信，难道他没收到我的信吗？

(4) 我那么大声喊你，难道你没听见？

### 3. 正

(1) 正要吃饭的时候，我的朋友谢利来了。

(2) 现在雨下得正大，等会儿再走吧。

### 4. 区长他们

"他们"放在人名、职务或称谓后边，指某人以及和他有某种关系的人(课文中"区长他们"指的是区长和另外那个同志)。例如：

"他们" is sometimes placed after the name of a person, or an official title and the like to denote the person in question and others related to him in some way or other.

(“区长他们” in the text means the district leader and the comrade who was with him.) E.g.

(1) 海娃醒来的时候，发现张连长他们正站在他身旁。

(2) 昨天晚上我回到宿舍的时候，阿里他们已经睡了。

(3) 爸爸他们工厂今年又进行了扩建。

### 5. 乱领

"乱"作动词的状态，表示动作无秩序或随便。例如：

When used as an adverbial adjunct, "乱" means to act at random or indiscriminately. E.g.

(1) 不会开机器不要乱开，不然会发生危险。

(2) 报纸看完了不要乱放。

(3) 叫孩子们不要乱跑。

### 6. 剩

"剩"作谓语和定语时，常带补语“下”。例如：

"剩", when used as a predicate or an attributive, very often takes the complement "下". E.g.

(1) 上次买的纸没用完，还剩(下)很多张。

(2) 大家都走了，屋子里只剩(下)我一个人了。

(3) 这节课先讲生词，再念课文，剩下的时间自己复习。

### 7. 却

"却"一般用于书面语，有“但是”、“可是”的意思。有的句子里前面有“但是”或“可是”，同时后面又有“却”。例如：

"却", usually used in the written language, has the sense of "但是" or "可是". In some cases, "但是" or "可是" is accompanied by "却" after it. E.g.

(1) 已经是冬天了，天气却不怎么冷。

(2) 这节课文比较长，生词却不太多。

(3) 公园离他家不远，可是他却很少去玩儿。

8. 一个一个

“一”加强词重叠后,作状语,一般表示逐个而不是同时,有时只是强调同类事物之多。第二个“一”一般可以省略。例如:

The reduplication of “一” followed by a measure word, when used as an adverbial adjunct, generally indicates that things are to be done one by one rather than at one go. Sometimes the expression merely stresses that things of the same category are in large numbers. The second “一” may usually be omitted. E.g.

- (1) 下课了, 学生一个一个地走出了教室。
- (2) 眼看这些楼一座座地修建起来了。
- (3) 这些问题我们必须一个一个地解决。

练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组: Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 睡得熟 记得熟 念得熟
2. 乱跑 乱说 乱拿 乱写 乱动
3. 转身 转过身来 转过身去

二、完成句子: Complete the following sentences:

1. 他正在看报, \_\_\_\_\_。(忽然)
2. 练习作了一半, \_\_\_\_\_。(剩)
3. 差五分钟就要上课了, \_\_\_\_\_。(赶快)
4. 他来过我们学校, \_\_\_\_\_。(认得)
5. 现在 \_\_\_\_\_ 还有二十分钟。(离)

6. 这个词早就学过了, \_\_\_\_\_。(难道)
7. 大家都知道这件事情, \_\_\_\_\_。(难道)

8. 他的两个哥哥都参加工作了, 一个在学校 \_\_\_\_\_, 一个在医院 \_\_\_\_\_。(当)

三、造句: Make sentences with:

1. 当 2. 离 3. 难道
4. 忽然 5. 却

四、在下列句子的空白里填上一个适当的词: Fill the blanks:

1. 我们学校 \_\_\_\_\_ 车站很远。
2. 那个学生说, 他毕业以后要回农村去 \_\_\_\_\_ 农民。
3. 去年张老师教我们, 今年 \_\_\_\_\_ 了一个新老师。
4. 那个孩子睡得正熟, 忽然让母亲 \_\_\_\_\_ 醒了。

五、把下列句子译成中文, 用上括号里的词语: Translate the following into Chinese, using the words and phrases in the brackets:

1. Now I'm going to answer one by one the questions you asked just now. (一个一个)
2. He turned up just at the moment I was looking for him. (正)

3. My younger brother said he would be a worker after graduation. (当)
  4. This dictionary can only be used in the library and is not (allowed) to be taken out. (许)
  5. When you go and see Shiwen and the others, take along these records. (...他们)
- 六、复述课文。 Retell the text.

I. Required Vocabulary.

A. Familiar Characters in Known Terms:

- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| 1. 大人 dàrén  | N: adult                               |
| 2. 然后 ránhòu | MA: afterwards, then                   |
| 3. 一夜 yíyè   | TW: a night, the whole night (long)    |
| 4. 许 xǔ      | V: permit, allow, let                  |
| 5. 认得 rènde  | V: know, recognize, be acquainted with |

B. New Characters and Terms:

- |          |  |
|----------|--|
| 6. 初 chū | BF: first, beginning   |
| 初期 chūqī | N: at the beginning, at the initial stage  |
| a.       | <p>抗日战争初期, 北京上海有很多大学生跑到重庆去。</p> <p>During the initial stages of the War of Resistance against Japan, there were many university students from Beijing and Shanghai who escaped to (ran to) Chongqing.</p>            |
| b.       | <p>解放初期, 中国各地刚开始新建设, 人民的生活水平还是不够高。</p> <p>During the initial stages of the Liberation when new construction had just begun in various parts of China, the people's standard of living was still not high enough.</p> |

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| 7. 敌 dí  | BF: enemy   |
| 敌人 dírén | N: enemy  |
| a.       | <p>我以为他是我们的朋友, 原来他是敌人。</p> <p>I had thought that he was our friend. It turns out that he is an enemy after all.</p>         |
| b.       | <p>敌人已经进村了, 我们赶快把粮食藏起来。</p> <p>The enemy has already entered the village. Let us hurriedly hide our foodstuff (grains).</p> |

c. 我们终于把敌人消灭了。

We finally annihilated the enemy.

8. 躲 duǒ

V: hide, avoid, keep away from, move out of the way, dodge

躲开 duǒkai

RC: move out of the way, get out of the way, stay clear of (see CR L.4, note #5)

a. “鬼子搜了很多家了，快到我们这儿了，你快躲躲吧。”

"The devils have already searched many homes. They will be here soon. You had better hurry and hide."

b. 游击队常躲在山后边等日本鬼子。

Guerrillas often hide behind the hills and wait for the Japanese devils.

c. 我正在路上走，一辆汽车来了，我很快地躲开了，不然我就受伤了。

As I was walking along the road, a car came along. I quickly moved aside, otherwise I would have been injured.

9. 愤 fèn

BF: anger, resentment (see item #15)

10. 忽 hū

BF: suddenly

忽然 hūrán

MA: suddenly, all of a sudden

a. 那个学生从前不错，不知道为什么最近忽然变坏了。

That student used to be pretty good. I don't know why, but all of a sudden he changed for the worse.

b. 刚才的天气还很好，怎么忽然下起雨来了。

The weather was still very good a little while ago. How come it suddenly started raining?

11. 慌 huāng

SV: frantic, hurriedly

不慌不忙 bùhuāngbùmáng

IE: with composure, calmly

a. 就要上课了，你怎么还不慌不忙地在这里喝茶呢？

It's about time for class. How come you are here calmly drinking tea?

- b. 敌人对那个孩子说：“快说游击队在哪里，不说我就杀了你！”那个孩子不慌不忙地说：“我不知道”。

The enemy said to that child, "Hurry up and tell us where the guerrillas are. If you don't I'll kill you." The child calmly replied, "I don't know."

12. 静 jìng BF: quiet, still  
(see item #19)

13. 亮 liàng SV: shining, bright  
天亮 tiānliàng Ph: daybreak, dawn, sunup

天亮了 tiān liàngle IE: day breaks, the sun's up

- a. 窗户太小，不够亮，我看不清楚。

The window is too small. It's not bright enough. I can't see clearly.

- b. 我经常天还没亮就起来。

I regularly rise before daybreak.

- c. 冬天天亮得比较晚。

In the winter day breaks comparatively late.

14. 乱 luàn SV/A: to be thrown into confusion, in confusion, at random; confused, disorderly, wildly, mixed up  
(see CR L.2, note #5)

乱起来 luànqilai RC: be thrown into confusion, become disorderly, go crazy, run wild

- a. 图书馆里的书不可以乱放，应该放回原来的地方。

Do not place library books at random. They should be returned to (their) original places.

- b. 那些孩子在街上乱跑，真危险。

Those children are running wildly in the street. This is really dangerous.

- c. 弟弟的屋子以前很整齐，最近越来越乱了。

The kid brother's room used to be quite neat. Recently it's getting more and more disorderly.

- d. 我们正参观自行车制造厂的时候，忽然听见枪声，大家立刻乱起来了。

As we visited the bicycle factory, all of a sudden we heard the sound of gunfire. Everybody was immediately thrown into confusion.



15. 怒 nù

BF: anger

愤怒 fènnù

SV: angry, indignant

- a. 那个人愤怒地说：“要是你再说一句话，我就打死你。”

That person said angrily, "If you say another word I will kill you."

- b. 老师给我们讲了很多敌人侵略中国的事情，使我们非常愤怒。

The teacher talked about many incidents where the enemy invaded China. These made us extraordinarily angry.

16. 区 qū

N: district

区长 qūzhǎng

N: district leader, head of a district  
(see CR L.2, note #4)

地区 dìqū

N: area, section, district

- a. 有很多工厂的地方叫工业区。

Places where there are many factories are called industrial districts.

- b. 工业区的空气不干净，对身体不好。

The air in industrial areas is dirty. It is not good for a person's health.

17. 剩 shèng

V: be left, have left, leave as remainder  
(see CR L.2, note #6)

- a. 上次买的铅笔没用完，还剩(了)很多，别买了。

We have not finished using the pencils that we bought last time. There are still many left. Don't buy any more.

- b. 那是昨天剩(下)的菜，最好扔了吧！

That's left over food from yesterday. Better throw it away!

- c. 老师说：“一个人一张纸，剩下的都收起来。”

The teacher said, "A sheet of paper to each person. Let's put away the rest."

18. 占 zhàn

V: seize, occupy (by force)

占领 zhàn lǐng

V: occupy

- a. 抗日初期，日本想占领全中国。

At the beginning of the War of Resistance against Japan, Japan wanted to occupy all of China.

b. 日本占领北京的时候,我还没上大学呢。

When Japan occupied Beijing, I had not yet gone to college.

c. 敌人先占领了大城,后来才占领了大城附近的地方。

The enemy first occupied the large cities. Only later did they occupy places in the vicinity of these large cities.

19. 镇 zhèn

BF: subdue

镇静 zhènjìng

SV: calm, unruffled

a. 日本鬼子敲着门大声说：“快开门！快开门！”爸爸很镇静的对我们说：“你们快躲起来，我去开门。”

Knocking on the door, the Japanese devils said loudly, "Open up! Open up!" Father said to us very calmly, "Hide quickly, I'll go open the door."

b. 眼看敌人就要进村了,大家都很着急,可是爸爸非常镇静。

The enemy was just about to enter the village and everybody was very worried, but father was extremely calm.

20. 罪 zuì

N: sin, crime, wrongdoing

罪行 zuìxíng

N: criminal act, crime

a. 敌人侵略中国的罪行真是说也说不完。

It's really impossible to mention everything about the enemy's criminal acts in invading China.

b. 从这张照片可以知道侵略军的罪行。侵略军拿着枪,地上躺着几个老人和两个孩子,身上、地上都是血。

From this photograph we can see the criminal acts of the invading army. (In it) the invading army soldiers are holding guns, and lying on the ground are several old persons and a couple of children. Their bodies and the ground are covered with blood.

C. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

21. 包围 bāowéi

V: surround, to besiege

a. 昨晚我们军队把敌人的首都包围了。

Last night our troops surrounded the enemy's capital.

b. 那位人民英雄一下火车就被热情的学生包围了。

As soon as the people's hero descended from the train he was surrounded by enthusiastic students.

22. 打倒 dǎdǎo

V: overthrow, "Down with ..." (in slogans)

a. 在广场上, 大学生喊着: "打倒日本鬼子。"

On the square, the university students yelled, "Down with the Japanese devils!"

23. 帝国主义 dìguózhǔyì

N/Att: imperialism; imperialist

a. 帝国主义国家从前常常侵略中国。

In the past imperialistic nations often invaded China.

b. 打倒帝国主义是中国常用的口号。

"Down with imperialism" is an oft used slogan in China.

c. 世界上不少国家的土地被帝国主义国家占领了。

There are many countries in the world whose territories have been occupied by imperialistic states.

24. 跟前 gēnqián

N: in front of

a. 敌人对站在跟前的大人们说: "谁是八路军, 快说出来!"

The enemy said to the adults in front of them, "Who is an Eighth Routh Army soldier? Hurry and speak up."

b. 要是你有意见, 请走到老师跟前去说, 这么远他听不清楚。

If you have any opinions, go in front of the teacher and tell (him). He can't hear you clearly when you are so far away.

25. 坏了 huàile

EX: (an exclamation of exasperation: Alas! Oh, no! Damn! Blast it! etc.)

a. "坏了! 我们村子已经被敌人包围了。"

"Alas! Our village has already been occupied by the enemy."

- b. “坏了！他已经昏迷了，快把他送到医院去。”

"On, no! He is already unconscious. Quickly send him to the hospital!"

26. 会 huì N: meeting

开会 kāihuì VO: hold a meeting, attend a meeting

办公室里一个人也没有，原来都去开会了。

There is not a single person in the office. It turns out that they have all gone to a meeting.

27. 机枪 jīqiāng N: machinegun (M: 挺 tǐng)

- a. 我会修理机枪，可是我没放过机枪。

I know how to repair machineguns, but I have never shot one.

- b. 我们躲在城楼里，敌人一来我们就用机枪打他们。

Let's hide inside the gate tower. As soon as the enemy arrives we'll shoot them with machineguns.

28. 架 jià V: put up, set up, jack up

- a. 敌人一包围了村子，就立刻架起了机枪。

As soon as the enemy surrounded the village, they immediately set up machineguns.

- b. 雨下得太大了，水流进车间了，快把机器架高一点儿。

It's raining too hard (now). Water is flowing into the workshop. Quickly jack the machinery up a little higher.

29. 拉 lā V: pull, drag, tug

鬼子常到村子来拉人去作很苦的工作。

The devils often come to the village to drag people off to perform hard labor.

30. 领 lǐng V: take away as one's own, claim; lead

- a. 现在你可以把你丢的东西领回去。

You can now claim the things that you lost.

- b. 鬼子叫我领他们去找游击队。

The devils told me to lead them in the search for guerillas.

31. 难道 nándào

MA: is it possible ...?, could it be that ...?, is it conceivable ...?

- a. 难道我还怕你吗?  
Is it possible that I'm afraid of you???
- b. 你难道一点办法都没有吗?  
Is it possible that you don't have any way out?
- c. 他到现在还没来, 难道他病了吗?  
Up to now he still hasn't arrived. Is it possible that he is sick?
- d. 这一点困难难道咱们都克服不了吗?  
Is it possible that we can't overcome such a small difficulty?

32. 强迫 qiǎngpò

V: force, compel

- a. 别强迫孩子做他们不喜欢做的事。  
Do not force children to do what they dislike doing.
- b. 敌人虽然架起了机枪强迫大家去劳动, 可是大家都很镇静地站在那里, 一动也不动。  
Although the enemy set up machineguns and forced everybody to get to work, (yet) everyone stood there calmly without making a single move.

33. 群 qún

BF/M: group, community, herd (used to indicate "many" or "group of")

人群 rénqún

N: crowd

- a. 鬼子从人群里一连拉出五个人, 问他们谁是八路军。  
The devils dragged out five persons from among the crowd and asked them who is an Eighth Route Army soldier?
- b. 一个鬼子站在人群跟前对孩子说: "只许把自己家里人领回去, 不许乱领!"  
A devil stood in front of the crowd and said to the children, "You are only allowed to take away your own folks. Claiming (people) indiscriminately is not permitted."
- c. 一个孩子赶着一群羊到山上去吃草。  
A child drove a flock of sheep up the mountain to graze.

34. 熟 shú

SV: sound (asleep, etc.)

睡熟 shuìshú

RC: sleep soundly

- 我一夜都没睡熟, 现在真不想起来。  
I did not sleep soundly all night. Now I really do not feel like getting up.

35. 消息 xiāoxi N: news, news item, information, "消息"
- 大家听到侵略军已经占领了北京的消息都很着急。
- When everybody heard the news that the invading army had already occupied Beijing, they were all very worried.

36. 一边(yībiān)(r) N: one side
- a. 鬼子对群众说：“男的站在一边，女的站在一边。”
- The devils said to the masses, "The men will stand to one side, the women to the other (side)."
- b. 天安门广场两边都有雄伟的建筑，一边是历史博物馆，另外一边是人民大会堂。
- There are imposing buildings on both sides of Tian An Men Square. One one side is the Historical Museum. On the other side is the Great Hall of the People.
- c. 请把今天的报放在一边，以前的报放在另外一边。
- Please place today's paper on one side; older papers on the other side.

37. 指 zhǐ V: point out, indicate
- a. 一个鬼子指着区长问我：“你认得他吗？”我说：“难道我连我爸爸也不认得吗？”
- A devil pointed at the district leader and asked me, "Do you recognize him?" I said, "Is it possible that I do not even recognize my own father?"
- b. 请在地图上指出来北京在哪里。
- Please point out on the map where Beijing is.

38. 周围 zhōuwéi N: all around, surroundings
- a. 鬼子把每家的人都叫出来，又把他们赶到一个周围架着机枪的广场上。
- The devils called everybody from every family and herded them to a square around which machineguns had been set up.
- b. 春天这座楼周围的草很绿。
- The grass surrounding this building is very green in the spring.
- c. 北京城的周围有城墙，城墙外头有小河。
- Surrounding the city of Beijing is a city wall, and there is a small river outside the city wall.

39. 转 zhuǎn V: turn, revolve, rotate, circle
- a. 昨天夜里我躺在床上，转过来转过去  
老是睡不熟。  
Last night as I lay on the bed, I first turned one way then another, and just could not fall sound asleep.
- b. 请你们都转过身来看这里。  
Will all of you please turn around and look here.

40. 昨 zuó BF: yesterday
- 昨晚 zuówǎn TW: last evening  
(contraction of "昨天晚上")
- 昨夜 zuóyè TW: last night  
(contraction of "昨天夜里")
- 昨日 zuórì TW: yesterday  
(written style, same as "昨天")
- a. 昨晚我没吃晚饭。  
Last evening I didn't eat supper.
- b. 昨夜十一点敌人在村子周围架起了机枪。  
Last night at 11:00 (PM) the enemy set up machineguns all around the village.
- c. 昨日区长讲敌人的罪行。  
Yesterday the district leader told about the enemy's crimes.

II. Additional Vocabulary:

1. 胆子 dǎnzi

N: courage

胆子小 dǎnzi xiǎo

IE: get scared easily, be timid

胆子大 dǎnzi dà

IE: brave

a. 那个人的胆子很大。

That man is very brave.

b. 我要去当游击队, 母亲说我是小孩子, 胆子小, 当不了。

I wanted to become a guerrilla; but mother said that I was a child, I got scared easily, and could not become one.

2. 骂

mà

V: curse, swear, scold

a. 母亲对孩子说: “不许打人也不许骂人”。

The Mother said to the child, "You are not permitted to hit people nor swear at people."

b. 弟弟作错了事, 躲在屋子里, 怕爸爸骂他。

The younger brother did something wrong. He hid inside the room, fearing that father would scold him.

3. 却

què

A: yet, but, still, on the other hand  
(see CR L.2, note #7)

a. 已经是夏天了, 天气却不怎么热。

It's already summer, but the weather isn't too warm.

b. 离我家不远的那个公园不大, 去玩的人却很多。

The park not too far from my home is not large, yet many people play there.

c. 那个孩子胆子真大, 敌人强迫他带路去找游击队, 他却不慌不忙地说“连我也不知道他们在哪里。”

That child is really brave. The enemy forced him to lead them on the way to look for the guerrillas, but he calmly said, "Even I don't know where they are."



4. 砸

zá

V: pound, hammer, smash, break

- a. 我睡得正熟, 忽然听见有人砸门,  
我赶快起来去开门。

When I was sleeping soundly, I heard someone pounding on the door. I hurriedly got up to open the door.

- b. 昨夜日本大使馆的门被砸了。

Last night the door to the Japanese Embassy was smashed.

I. Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passage and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

抗日战争初期,日本帝国主义侵略军很快地就打到北京来了。虽然国军打得很勇敢,但是敌人各种的枪,飞机和车辆都比中国军队多。所以,最后我们的城还是被敌人包围了,被占领了。敌人来得那么快,我们家里的人都走不了了,躲不开了。

敌人刚开始占领的时候,占领区里很乱,所以敌人在城的周围和街上处处都架着机枪。他们常常从人群里把人拉出来,强迫他们指出谁是国军的游击队。这些被拉出来的人,男的、女的都有,又打又骂。很多小孩子转过身去不敢看。街上的人看见鬼子们这样压迫中国人民,都非常愤怒,都决心要消灭敌人。



不怕死的精神我是永远也不会忘了的。

1. When did the Japanese Army advance to Beijing?
2. What terms were used to describe the Japanese Army?
3. How did our forces (lit. national forces) fight? What was the fate of our city?
4. How were conditions in the occupied zone?
5. What was done in my hometown?
6. What did they often do there?
7. What kind of people were dragged out, and what was done to them?
8. What was the reaction of the children, and of the people on the streets?

9. When did they come to our house? What caused me to awaken?
10. What did they do with the male members of my family?
11. What did I observe concerning the adults?
12. Where were we locked up?
13. How were conditions there?
14. What did they ask me? What did I say?
15. What became of my brother, and why?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.

Answer Key:

Score

1. during the initial stages of the War of Resistance against Japan 5  
1 2 1 1
2. imperialist invading army 3  
2 1
3. they fought bravely; the city was surrounded and occupied by the enemy 8  
2 2 2 2
4. they were thrown into confusion (were disorderly) 2  
2
5. the enemy set up machineguns all around the city and everywhere 11  
2 2 2 2 1 1  
in the streets  
1
6. dragged people from the crowd and forced them to point out who were 10  
2 1 2 2 2  
our guerrillas  
1
7. both men and women; both beat them and swore at them 6  
1 1 1 1 2
8. many children turned around and didn't dare look; the people were 13  
1 2 1 1  
extremely angry, and all resolved to annihilate the enemy  
1 2 1 1 1 2
9. before daybreak; sudden sounds of door-smashing and shouting 10  
1 2 2 1 1 2 1
10. they were herded outside the house, and were not allowed to move 8  
2 1 1 2 1  
or talk  
1
11. contrary to expectations, they were still standing calmly inside and 8  
2 1 2 1  
outside the house  
1 1
12. several small rooms not far from their troops' fortified point 6  
1 1 1 1 1 1
13. the rooms were windowless and without beds; the air was extremely bad 6  
1 1 1 1 1 1
14. they asked me who in my family was a guerrilla and who had involvement 12  
1 1 1 1 1  
with our forces; "I don't recognize even one guerrilla!"  
2 2 1 1
15. he was not rescued, because he was a guerrilla in our national forces 5  
2 1 2

---

Total: 113

Passing: 80

II. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

战争初期,有一天<sup>1.</sup>  
天还没亮,我睡得  
正熟,忽然母亲的  
一位朋友来砸我  
们家的门,把我们  
叫醒了,他告诉我们  
们一个消息:“离我  
们这里不远的几  
个区都被敌人占  
领了,你们到别的  
地方去躲一躲吧!”  
我转头向外面一  
看,一群一群的人  
群,男的拉着女的,  
大人拉着小孩乱  
跑,我问他:“难道  
你不走吗?”他不慌  
不忙地说:“要是大

家都躲起来,谁去  
对付敌人呢?”

2. 有一次王区长正<sup>2.</sup>  
在村里开会,给我  
们讲帝国主义罪  
行的时候,坏了,忽  
然敌人包围了村  
子.他们在村子周  
围架起了机枪,把  
全村的人赶到广  
场上去,强迫男人  
站在一边,女人站  
在一边,不许乱站.  
然后走到我们跟  
前,一个一个地问“你  
们认得谁是区长  
吗?”我们都很镇  
静地回答:“不认得!”  
最后剩下一个八、九  
岁的小孩子.这个  
孩子胆子真不小.  
敌人要他指出谁



是区长，他却指着  
自己说：“我就是区  
长。”故人异常愤怒，  
又骂他又打他，不  
许他母亲把他领  
回去。不知道他后  
来怎么样了。

最近八路军一连<sup>3</sup>。  
包围了敌人占领  
的几个村子。同志  
们在每一个村子的  
周围都大声地  
向敌人喊着：“你们  
一个一个举起手  
走出来投降，不许  
乱动，不许说话。谁  
乱动，乱说话就打  
死谁！”

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.

KEY - Model Translations:

Paragraph 1:

During<sub>2</sub> / the initial stages / of the war, / one day / before / daybreak /  
I was sleeping / soundly, / when / we suddenly / were awakened /  
by a friend / of mother's / who came / and pounded / on the door /  
of our home. / He told us / a bit of news: / "Several / districts /  
not far / from / us / here / have all / been occupied / by the enemy, /  
(and) you should go / to some other place / to hide!" / I turned /  
my head / toward / the outside / and took a look, / and saw / crowd /  
after crowd / of people, / the men / tugging / the women, / the adults /  
tugging / the children, / running / in confusion. / I asked him, / saying, /  
"Is it conceivable that / you don't go?" / He / calmly / said, / "If /  
everybody / all / hides, / who / will go / deal with / the enemy?" / (58/82)

Paragraph 2:

One time, / just at the time / District Leader / Wang /  
was holding a meeting / in the village / and telling us / (about) the crimes /  
of imperialism, / when alas, / suddenly / the enemy / had surrounded /  
the village. / They / set up / machineguns / all around / the village, /  
and herded / the people / of the entire village / onto the square. /  
(They) forced / the men / to stand / on one side, / the women / to stand /  
on another side, / and did not permit / (people) to stand /  
in a disorderly fashion. / Afterward, / (they) walked up / in front of us, /  
and one by one / they asked (us): / "Do you know / who is /  
the district leader?" / We all / answered / very / calmly, /

"No! / ((We) don't recognize (him))." / Finally, / there was left (only) /  
an eight or nine / year old child. / This child / really had /  
great courage. / The enemy / wanted him / to point out / who was /  
the district leader, / but / he / pointed at / himself / and said, /  
"I am / the district leader." / The enemy / was unusually / angry, /  
(and) both / cursed him / and hit him, / and didn't let / his mother /  
take him back. / I don't know / what became of him / afterwards. / (79/112)

Paragraph 3:

Recently, / the Eighth Route Army / surrounded / in succession /  
several villages / that were occupied / by the enemy. / All around /  
each village / the comrades / loudly / shouted / toward / the enemy: /  
"(All of) you, / raise your hands / and come out / one by one /  
and surrender. / Do not / move / in a disorderly manner. / Do not talk. /  
Whoever / moves / or speaks / in a disorderly way / will be killed." /  
(28/39)

### 第三课 黔之驴

从前，贵州这个地方没有驴。有人从别的地方运来一头。因为没有什么用处，就把它放在山脚下。

一只小老虎从山里跑出来，看见山下这个又高又大的东西，以为是什么怪物，吓得赶快躲进了树林。

一天，小老虎又从山里出来。碰巧，驴突然大叫起来，这更吓坏了小老虎，以为驴要来吃它，就急忙逃走了。过了一会儿，小老虎又悄悄地跑回来，仔细观察驴的动静。发现驴虽然个子很大，好象也没有什么特别的本事。

过了几天，它对驴的叫声也渐渐听惯了，就不那么害怕了，有时候还走下山来，在驴的前后转一转。

后来，小老虎胆子更大了。有一次它走到驴跟前，故意撞了驴一下。这可把驴惹火了，它不但大叫，还伸开两条后腿乱踢。小老虎一看，高兴地说：“你这个庞然大物，原来就这么点本事！”于是就大叫一声，扑过去，把它吃了。

生词 New words

1. 之 (助) zhī  
*a structural particle meaning "的" in classical Chinese*
2. 驴 (名) lú [头] ass, donkey
3. 从前 (名) cóngqián formerly, in the past
4. 用处 (名) yòngchù use
5. 山脚 (名) shānjiǎo foot of a mountain
6. 老虎 (名) lǎohǔ [只] tiger
7. 怪物 (名) guàiwù monster
8. 吓 (动) xià to frighten, to scare, to intimidate
9. 树林 (名) shùlín wood, forest
10. 碰巧 (形) pèngqiǎo by coincidence, by chance, to happen to
11. 急忙 (形) jí máng hurried, hurriedly
12. 逃 (动) táo to escape, to flee
13. 悄悄 (副) qiāoqiāo gently, softly

14. 仔细 (形) zǐxì careful, attentive
15. 观察 (动) guānchá to observe
16. 动静 (名) dòngjǐng movements (if any)
17. 个子 (名) gèzi size, stature
18. 好象 (动) hǎoxiàng to seem, as if
19. 本事 (名) běnshi ability, capability
20. 渐渐 (副) jiànjiàn gradually, little by little
21. 惯 (形) guàn accustomed to, used to
22. 害怕 (动) hàipà to fear, to be scared
23. 转 (动) zhuǎn to walk round, to take a turn
24. 故意 (副) gùyì on purpose, deliberately
25. 撞 (动) zhuàng to knock against
26. 可 (副) kě indeed
27. 惹 (动) rě to provoke, to exasperate
28. 火 (形) huǒ angry
29. 伸 (动) shēn to stretch
30. 腿 (名) tuǐ [条] leg
31. 踢 (动) tī to kick
32. 庞然大物 pángrándàwù huge monster
33. 于是 (连) yúshì thereupon, then
34. 扑 (动) pū to jump upon

专名 Proper names

- |       |         |                                     |
|-------|---------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. 黔  | Qián    | <i>an ancient name for Kweichow</i> |
| 2. 贵州 | Guizhōu | Kweichow Province                   |

词语例解 Notes

1. 以为

“以为”有认为的意思。例如：

“以为” means to think. E.g.

- (1) 要学好一种外文，我以为实践是很重要的。

“以为”还常含有事后发现原来想法不符合实际的意思。例如：

“以为” often implies that one's estimate has turned out to be incorrect or inaccurate. E.g.

- (2) 我以为这个礼堂只能容纳三百人，没想到却坐得下五百多人。
- (3) 原来是你，我还以为是小张呢。

2. 大叫

“大”作状语，可以表示声势大、程度深等。例如：

“大”，when used as an adverbial adjunct, may show that something has developed on a large scale or to a high degree. E.g.

- (1) 社员们大干了一个冬天，修起了一个水库。

- (2) 他一句话说得我们大笑起来。
- (3) 天已经大亮了。

3. 吓坏了

“吓”作补语，表示通过一个动作使事物由好变坏，或动作未达到预期目的。例如：

“吓”，when used as a complement, shows the result of an action, that is, something has changed from good to bad or an action has failed to achieve the anticipated result. E.g.

- (1) 昨天晚上很冷，白菜都冻坏了。
- (2) 这件衣服穿坏了，我想买件新的。
- (3) 这几个字写坏了，再写一遍吧。

“吓”作补语，还有一种引申意义，表示程度深。例如：

The complement “吓” sometimes has an extended meaning of “to a high degree”. E.g.

- (4) 这几天真把我忙坏了。
- (5) 小红玩儿了一天，可把她累坏了。

4. 好象

- (1) 今天天气真暖和，好象春天一样。
- (2) 这个同志我好象在哪里见过。
- (3) 在工地上，战士们劳动起来，个个好象小老虎。

5. 故意

- (1) 海娃故意把日本鬼子带到了有地雷的地方。

(2) 小红故意把弟弟的书藏起来，弟弟直着急。

6. 可

“可”有加强程度的作用，句尾常有“了”呼应。例如：

“可” sometimes is an intensive word meaning “indeed” and is often accompanied by “了” at the end of the sentence. E. g.

- (1) 他对同志可热情了。
  - (2) 他经常看报，对世界大事可关心了。
- “可”有时表示完成一个动作或达到一个目的是不容易的。例如：  
“可” sometimes indicates that great effort was required to accomplish an aim. E. g.

- (3) 我找了你半天，可把你找到了。
- (4) 要借这本书的人很多，今天我可借到了。

7. 就这么点本事

“就”可以直接用在名词、代词、数量词等组成的结构前，等于“只有”。例如：

“就” may be used immediately before a noun, pronoun or a phrase with a numeral to take the place of “只有”. E. g.

- (1) 这节课就二十个生词，比较容易。
- (2) 就他们几个人会唱这个歌。

练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组： Read aloud the following phrases:

- 1. (没)有用处 很有用处 用处很大

- 2. 仔细想一想 仔细看看 观察得很仔细
- 3. (没)有动静 听到动静 观察动静

二、完成句子： Complete the following sentences:

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_, 但是到邮局一看，原来是八点开门。(以为)
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_, 但是学的时候却不觉得难。(以为)
- 3. 那个游击队员注意地\_\_\_\_\_。(动静)
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_, 在哪一课我忘了。(好象)
- 5. 冬天快过去了,\_\_\_\_\_。(渐渐)
- 6. 今天在市中心开大会,\_\_\_\_\_。(可)

三、造句： Make sentences with:

- 1. 以为 2. 仔细 3. 好象 4. 渐渐
- 5. 故意 6. 可

四、翻译下面的短文：

Translate the following passage into English:

古时候，贵州没有驴。有人从别的地方运来一头。一只小老虎从山上跑下来，看见了这一个大东西，不知道它有多大本事，所以很害怕。后来，经过仔细观察，发现驴只会跳跳叫叫。小老虎想：“你虽然很大，但就这么点本事。”于是就扑过去，把它吃了。

五、复述课文。 Retell the text.

I. Required Vocabulary.

A. Familiar Characters in Known Terms:

- |        |          |   |
|--------|----------|---|
| 1. 本事  | běnsì    | N: ability, know-how  |
| 2. 不一定 | bùyídìng | A: not necessarily, uncertain   |
| 3. 从来  | cónglái  | MA: heretofore, in the past   |
| 4. 从前  | cóngqián | MA: formerly  |
| 5. 象   | xiàng    | V/A/SV: resemble; seem alike; look like   |
| 好象     | hǎoxiàng | V/A: resemble; a good deal like, just as though, as if                                    |
| 6. 以为  | yǐwéi    | V: suppose, think that, consider that, make a false assumption that (see CR L.3, note #1) |
| 7. 用处  | yòngchù  | N: use, usage   |
| 8. 于是  | yúshì    | MA: thereupon, therefore, then  |

B. New Characters and Terms:

- |      |         |                                   |
|------|---------|-----------------------------------|
| 9. 察 | chá     | BF: examine, observe, investigate |
| 观察   | guānchá | V: observe                        |

a. 连长派我到敌人占领的地方去观察一下敌人的活动。

The Company Commander is sending me to enemy occupied areas to observe enemy activity.

b. 这是一部新机器,我们应该先观察机器的各部分再学怎么用。

This is a new machine. We should first observe each part of the machine and then learn how to use it.



10. 害      hài      V: injure, harm, damage  
 害怕      hàipà      SV: be afraid, be scared, be frightened  
 a. 枪声响了, 村子里的人都很害怕, 所以立刻就乱起来了。

Gunfire was sounded and the people of the village were very frightened. therefore they were immediately thrown into confusion.

- b. 有的小孩子很怕跟不认识的人说话, 可是我一点儿也不害怕。

Some children are afraid to talk with people they don't know. But I am not afraid in the least.

11. 虎      hǔ      N/BF: tiger  
 老虎      lǎohǔ      N: tiger (M: 只)

- a. 我有一张中国画儿, 上边有一只大老虎和三只小老虎, 画得很好跟活的一样。

I have a Chinese painting, on which there is a big tiger and three little tigers. (They are) well painted and lifelike.

- b. 我听过一个老虎吃小孩子的故事, 希望没有那样的事情发生。

I heard a story about a tiger eating a child. I hope such things do not happen.

12. 渐      jiàn      BF: gradually, little by little

- 渐渐      jiànjiàn      A: gradually, little by little

- a. 冬天快到了, 天气渐渐地冷了。

Winter will soon arrive. The weather is gradually getting colder.

- b. 开始听中文广播, 觉得很难; 渐渐地就觉得容易了。

When I started listening to Chinese-language broadcasts, I felt it was very difficult. Gradually I felt it became easier.

- c. 刚到一个新地方, 什么都不习惯, 也很害怕; 渐渐地就没有困难了。

When just arriving at a new place, one is unaccustomed to everything, and also is very afraid. Gradually, there will be no difficulties.

13. 脚 jiǎo N: foot, base or foundation of anything

山脚 shānjiǎo N: foot of a mountain  
(often uses a positional suffix,  
such as "下" or "那里," below)

- a. 海娃天天到离她家不远的山脚下去放羊。

Every day Hai Wa would go to the foot of the mountain not far from her home and tend the sheep.

- b. 夏天吃过晚饭以后, 我们常到山脚那里去散步。

After supper during the summer, we often stroll to the foot of the hill.

14. 林 lín BF: wood, forest

树林 shùlín N: woods, forest

- a. 老虎住在树林里。

The tiger lives in the forest.

- b. 游击队常常藏在树林里等着敌人来, 就打他们。

The guerrillas frequently hide in the forest, waiting for the enemy to come, and then hit them.

- c. 那个树林里的树又高又大。

The trees in the forest are both tall and big.

15. 碰 pèng V: collide, hit, meet unexpectedly

16. 巧 qiǎo SV: clever, skillful; coincidental, lucky

碰巧 pèngqiǎo MA: by coincidence, by chance, happen to

- a. 我刚要去找小王, 碰巧小王就来了。

I was just about to look for Xiao Wang, when he happened to arrive.

- b. 我去医院看朋友, 碰巧遇见一位老同学, 他在那个医院工作。

I went to the hospital to visit a friend. By chance I ran into an old schoolmate. He works in that hospital.

- c. 碰巧我妹妹的名字和你姐姐的(名字)一样。

Coincidentally my younger sister's name is the same as your elder sister's.

17. 伸 shēn V: stretch, extend, spread out

伸开 shēnkāi RC: extend

- a. 张小华发现操场地上有一个小纸包儿,就伸手把它捡起来交给她的老师了。

Zhang Xiao-hua discovered a small paper package in the drill field. She extended her hand to pick it up and turned it over to her teacher.

- b. 坐火车或者坐汽车,别把手伸到车外头去,很危险。

When riding a train or riding in a car, don't extend your hand out of the vehicle. This is very dangerous.

- c. 我们要努力工作,不能伸开手向别人要钱。

We should work hard, (and) not extend (our) hands to beg from other people.

18. 逃 táo V: escape, flee

逃走 táozǒu V: run away, escape

- a. 受压迫的人老想逃走。

Oppressed people always wish to escape.

- b. 我们村子已经被鬼子包围了,没办法逃了。

Our village is already surrounded by the devils. There is no way to escape.

- c. 中国解放以后,许多外国人都逃到日本去了。

After China's liberation, many foreigners fled to Japan.

19. 腿 tuǐ N: leg (M: 条)

后腿 hòutuǐ N: hind legs

- a. 人有两条腿,羊有四条腿,桌子也有四条腿。

Humans have two legs. Sheep have four legs. Tables also have four legs.

- b. 哥哥学滑雪,伤了腿,流了不少血。

When elder brother learned to ski he injured his leg. He bled a lot.

- c. 羊有两条前腿,两条后腿。

A sheep has two front legs (and) two hind legs.

20. 细 xì SV: detailed, minute, fine  
(see item #25)
21. 吓 xià V: frighten, scare, intimidate  
吓坏了 xiàhuàile RC: frighten badly  
(see CR L.3, note #3)
- a. 小红一看见敌人拿着枪来了, 吓得赶快跑回家去了。  
As soon as Xiao Hong saw the enemy approaching carrying a gun, she became so scared that she ran back home.
- b. 昨天晚上我骑自行车回家的时候, 忽然有一个人把我的车抢走了, 真把我吓坏了。  
As I was riding my bicycle home last night, a man suddenly snatched it away from me. It really frightened me badly.
22. 之 zhī LW: (a classical Chinese structural particle often used in modern written Chinese for "的")
- a. 美国之音广播音乐吗?  
Does Voice of America broadcast music?
- b. 六毛钱的三分之一是两毛。  
One third of sixty cents is twenty cents.
23. 州 zhōu N: province (China), State (USA)  
贵州 Guìzhōu PW: Guizhou Province
24. 撞 zhuàng V: knock against, bump into, collide
- a. 弟弟乱跑乱跳, 他的腿撞上了桌子腿, 坐在地上直大叫。  
In his wild running & jumping, younger brother's leg bumped into the table leg. He sat on the ground and kept on yelling.
- b. 有一个人撞了我一下, 后来才发现那个人把我的钢笔拿走了。  
A man bumped into me. Only later did I discover that the man had taken away my pen.
- c. 街上有一群人站在那里, 我走过去一看, 原来是撞车了, 可是没人看见是怎么撞上的。  
A group of people was standing on the street and I went over to look. It turns out that there had been a car collision, but nobody saw how they collided.

25. 仔 zǐ

BF: careful

仔细 zǐxì

A/SV: carefully; attentive, meticulous

- a. 这件事情请你仔细想一想再决定。  
Please think carefully about this matter before you decide.
- b. 我们应该把这个报告仔细看看。  
We should carefully look at this report.
- c. 船长把船的各部分都观察得很仔细。  
The captain inspected each part of the ship very carefully.

C. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

26. 动静 dòngjìng

N: movement, activity, action  
(being taken)

- a. 那个游击队员注意地观察敌人的动静。  
That guerrilla attentively observed the activities of the enemy.
- b. 我们的村子被敌人包围了, 有一天夜里我哥哥问我: "你听到动静了吗?"  
Our village was surrounded by the enemy. One night my elder brother asked me, "Do you hear of any activity?"
- c. 听说敌人要来抢东西, 可是等了半天, 没有什么动静。  
I heard that the enemy was coming here to rob our things. But after waiting for quite a while, nothing happened.

27. 个子 gèzi

N: size, stature

- a. 个子特别大的人, 很难买到合适的衣服。  
People who are especially large in stature have a hard time buying clothes that fit.
- b. 王连长的个子比较高, 看着很(有)精神。  
Company Commander Wang's stature is comparatively huge (big and tall). He looks full of spirit.
- c. 他爸爸妈妈个子都小, 他的个子却很大。  
Both his parents are small in stature, yet his stature is large.

28. 故意 gùyì

A: on purpose, deliberately

- a. 上课的时候老师故意把字写错了, 目的是要知道我们看得仔细不仔细。

During class, the teacher purposely made mistakes in writing characters. The purpose was to find out whether or not we looked carefully.

- b. 小刚故意把敌人带到有地雷的地方去。

Little Gang purposely led the enemy to places where there were land mines.

- c. 我很喜欢那架收音机, 但是我的钱不够, 所以我故意说我不喜欢那样儿的。

I liked that radio receiver very much, but I did not have enough money. So I purposely said that I did not like that kind.

29. 怪物 guàiwu

N: monster

- a. 我儿子很喜欢看怪物的电影。

My son likes to see monster movies.

- b. 要是有人故意说你是一个怪物, 你怎么办?

If somebody purposely said that you are a monster, what would you do?

30. 惯 guàn

SV: accustomed to, used to

- a. 开始我听不惯王老师说说的话, 有时候听不懂; 渐渐地就听惯了。

In the beginning I was not accustomed to listening to Professor Wang's speech. Sometimes I could not understand. Gradually I got accustomed to listening (to him).

- b. 吃惯了中国饭, 真不喜欢吃外国饭。

Once you are accustomed to eating Chinese food, you will no longer enjoy eating foreign food.

- c. 我们刚搬到这里来, 我老觉得这里的天气太冷; 渐渐地就惯了。

When we first moved here I always felt that the weather here was too cold. Gradually I got accustomed to it.

31. 火(儿) huǒ(r)

SV: angry

a. 因为我说他是怪物,他真火了。

Because I said he was a monster, he became really angry.

b. 我故意把哥哥借来的书藏起来,他火极了要打我。

I purposely hid the book that elder brother had borrowed. He was extremely mad and wanted to hit me.

c. 我虽然很火,可是我不能打他。

Although I was very mad, yet I could not hit him.

32. 急忙 jí máng

A: hurried; hurriedly

a. 我忘了带书到学校来,所以急忙跑回家去拿。

I forgot to bring my books to school, so I hurriedly ran back home to get them.

b. 一个八路军受了重伤,同志们急忙把他送到医院去。

A member of the Eighth Route Army received a serious injury. His comrades hurriedly sent him to the hospital.

c. 姐姐回到家里,急急忙忙地换了衣服,连饭也没吃就走了。

When elder sister got home, she hurriedly changed and left without even eating supper.

33. 叫 jiào

V: yell, shout, cry out (if an animal or bird, can be translated "roar," "bray," "squawk," etc.)

叫声 jiàoshēng

N: cry, roar, etc.

大叫 dàjiào

V: cry out loudly, shout, bray loudly

大声叫 dàshēngjiào

Ph: cry out loudly, bray loudly

大叫一声 dàjiàoyīshēng

Ph: give out a loud cry or roar

a. 老虎的叫声很可怕。

A tiger's roar is very frightening.

b. 那个病人常常大声叫。

That patient often cries out loudly.

c. 那只老虎大叫一声就死了。

That tiger gave out a loud roar then died.

34. 可 kě

A: indeed, certainly (when strongly stressed, means "at last," "finally")  
(see CR L.3, note #6)

a. 你写的汉字可真好。

Your Chinese characters are indeed really well written!!!

b. 我可毕业了。

I (finally) graduated!!!

c. 他经过不断地努力, 现在可把困难都克服了。

Through his incessantly doing his best, he has at last overcome his difficulties.

35. 转 zhuàn

V: walk around, take a turn or spin

a. 我在街上转了半天才找到那个小商店。

I walked around on the street for a long time before finding that little store.

b. 有一个人在我们宿舍外边转来转去, 不知道他要做什么。

There is someone walking back and forth outside our dormitory. I do not know what he is going to do.

c. 小孩老喜欢在母亲的身旁转, 让母亲没办法做事。

Children always love to walk (hover) around their mother, causing them to have no way of working.



II. Additional Vocabulary

1. 驴 lǘ N: donkey, ass (M: 头)
- a. “黔之驴”的意思是贵州的驴。  
"Qian zhi lǘ" means the donkey of Guizhou Province.
- b. 驴好象羊, 可是个子比羊大一点。  
A donkey resembles a sheep, but its stature is a little larger.
- c. 北京城外有驴, 从前我和朋友常骑驴到山上去玩儿。  
There are donkeys outside the city of Beijing. Formerly, my friends and I often rode donkeys to the mountain to have a good time.
2. 庞然大物 páng rán dà wù Ph: huge monster, a mammoth animal
- a. 驴比小老虎大得多, 所以小老虎想驴是庞然大物。  
Donkeys are much larger than little tigers. So the little tiger thought the donkey was a huge monster.
- b. 听说山上有个庞然大物, 我真想去看看。  
I heard that there was huge monster up the hill. I really feel like going there to see it.
3. 扑 pū V: rush, spring, pounce
- a. 昨天晚上我刚出门, 就有一个人扑过来, 可把我吓坏了。  
I had just gone out last night, when a person rushed over (to me). Indeed, it badly frightened me.
- b. 游击队躲在山里, 一看见敌人就立刻扑过去, 打敌人。  
Guerrillas hide in the hills, and as soon as they see the enemy they immediately spring out and hit them.
4. 黔 Qián PW: Guizhou Province (ancient name)
- (Note: in written Chinese, single characters are often used for names of provinces.)

5. 悄悄 qiāoqiāo

A: silently, stealthily

- a. 那个孩子看见母亲睡得正熟, 就悄悄地跑出去玩儿了。

When the child saw that his mother was soundly asleep, he stealthily ran out to play.

- b. 电影已经开始了, 我们悄悄地走进去, 坐在后头了。

The movie had already started. We walked in stealthily and sat down in the rear.

6. 惹 rě

V: provoke, incite, cause, instigate  
(conveniently translated "make,"  
as -- trouble, -- angry)

- a. 那个跳舞的女孩子, 舞跳得很好, 并且很好看, 很惹人喜欢。

The young female dancer dances really well. Moreover, she is very beautiful and makes people like (her).

- b. 有一次我把爸爸惹火了, 他叫我离开家别回来了。

Once I made my father angry. He told me to leave home and don't return.

7. 踢 tī

V: kick

- a. 小老虎故意把驴惹火了, 驴伸开两条后腿直乱踢。

The little tiger purposely made the donkey mad. The donkey extended its two hind legs and kept kicking wildly.

- b. 谁把我刚种的这棵小树踢倒了?

Who kicked down this little tree that I had just planted?

- c. 弟弟很火直踢桌子。

Younger brother is very angry and keeps kicking the table.

Proper Name:

8. 武松 Wǔ Sōng

N: (personal name)

## Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passages and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

八百多年前中国有一个人姓武  
(wǔ) 叫松(sōng)他个子很高,很勇敢,力量很  
大,也很有本事。所以认识他的人都不  
敢惹他。

有一次,他从很远的地方回家。在  
路上走了一天,太阳下山了才走到一  
个山脚边儿上的村子。因为走得很累,  
想休息,也想吃点东西,于是他就走进  
那个村子里去了。碰巧他找到了一个  
卖吃的东西的地方,那儿的人告诉他:  
“现在山上有一个大怪物,有人说是  
一只老虎。很多人已经被它吓坏了,也  
有人被它吃了。没有什么特别本事的人  
最好在我们这里住一夜,等天亮再上  
山。”说完就把门关上了。

武松(wǔ sōng)想那些人觉得他胆子  
小,没有用处。所以他可有点火了。于是

他买了点吃的,给了钱,把门踢开就走了。

在山路上他看见了一棵大树,上头写着:“山上有老虎,过山的人,要在中午很多人一起过山,不要被老虎吃了。”武松<sup>(Wǔ Sōng)</sup>看了笑着说:“这是村子里做买卖的故意吓人,好让人到他们那儿去住一夜,我上惯了山了,我才不害怕呢!”于是他继续往前走。

天渐渐地黑了。武松<sup>(Wǔ Sōng)</sup>走进了一个树林子里,看见了一块大石头。他在大石头前头,后头,左边,右边转了转,仔细观察了一下,什么动静也没有。后来他就躺在石头上,把腿伸开,想睡一会觉,忽然树林里好象有声音响,接着就看见一只大老虎跳出来了!武松<sup>(Wǔ Sōng)</sup>一看,大叫一声,从石头上跳起来,急忙地躲在石头旁边,非常紧张。他想逃也逃不了。

这时候老虎向上一扑,好象是从天上跳下来。武松<sup>(Wǔ Sōng)</sup>出了一身冷汗,

看见老虎扑过来,就急忙地躲。老虎转过  
身来又扑,武松 (Wǔ Sōng) 又一躲。这样一  
扑一躲,有好几次。武松 (Wǔ Sōng) 的信心越  
来越大,后来终于靠他的两只手把老  
虎打死了!

1. Describe Wu Song:
2. How was he treated by acquaintances?
3. Where was the village situated?
4. Whom did the villagers recommend should spend the night in their village?
5. After paying, what did Wu Song do?
6. Why did Wu Song continue on ahead in spite of the posted warning?
7. What was happening to the sky?

8. What did he enter, and what did he find there?
  
9. What did he initially do there?
  
10. After that, what did he do?
  
11. Describe in detail what happened after an animal leaped out of the forest:
  
12. What happened several times?
  
13. How was Wu Song getting along, and what did he do in the end?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.

Answer Key:

Score

1. he was a man of tall stature, very brave, very strong and very  
1 2 1 1 1 1 1 10  
capable  
2
2. no one dared provoke him 4  
1 1 2
3. at the foot of the mountain 4  
2 2
4. persons who had no special ability 5  
1 1 1 2
5. he kicked open the door and left 5  
2 1 1 1
6. he was used to travelling in (on) the mountains, and was 5  
2 1  
not scared at all.  
2
7. the sky was gradually getting dark 3  
2 1
8. a forest; a boulder (big rock) 3  
2 1
9. he walked around the front, rear, left and right of the boulder 11  
2 1 1 1 1 1  
and made a careful observation  
2 2
10. he lay down on the boulder and stretched out his legs 6  
1 1 2 2
11. Wu Song gave out a big yell and jumped up from the boulder; 15  
2 1 1  
he hurriedly hid beside the boulder and was extremely nervous;  
2 1 1 1  
he wanted to escape, but couldn't do so  
1 2 2
12. the tiger pounced and Wu Song dodged 8  
2 2 2 2
13. Wu Song became more and more confident; by relying on his own 7  
1 1 1  
two hands he killed the tiger  
1 1 2

---

Total: 86

Passing: 61

II. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

1. 你听过讲驴的故事吗?我听过一个故事是讲一头驴的。这个故事发生在中国,叫“黔之驴”,意思是“贵州的驴”。

1.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

2. 中国的西南边有一个地方叫贵州。从前那里是没有驴的。后来有人从别的地方运了一头驴到贵州去了;但是驴运去以后,因为人们还

2.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



不知道驴有什么  
用处,所以只好把  
它放在山脚下,让  
它在那里吃草。

3. 一只小老虎看见  
驴在山脚下,只会  
伸开两条后腿乱  
踢,没有别的事;  
于是就叫一声,把  
扑到驴身上,把驴  
吃掉。

4. 百分之九十以上  
的人都遇见过,  
过我老虎吧!有一  
次,林,动个  
碰巧看见一个那  
物向我走来,那  
动的样子好象很  
可怕,后来那个  
动了,我渐渐走  
过来,把我

吓坏了,原来是  
一只老虎!我在  
里从老虎来,我  
老可虎,我没碰  
急忙逃,能惹它  
走。了。

5. 人们都说看见  
一只怪物在我家  
背后山脚树林  
里转来转去。有  
天我故意躲在山  
脚附近观察。林  
里并没有什么动  
静,也不见有什么  
怪物出来。我于  
是用脚踢了几棵  
看看到底有没有  
怪物出来。这可  
那怪物惹火了,它  
跑出来撞了,还把  
我的腿撞了。我以  
为撞上了怪物了,

再仔细一看,原来,  
那不是什怪物,  
是我家的一只老  
羊.

从前村里有一个  
农民叫谢平.他的  
个子很小,人们都  
叫他“小个子”.后来  
因为大家都叫惯  
了“小个子”,叫他“谢  
平”的人反而很少  
了.我们都知道个  
子小的人不一定  
没有本事.谢平的  
本事就很大,他也  
很喜欢帮助别人,  
所以大家都喜欢  
他.

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.

KEY - Model Translations:

Paragraph 1:

Have you / ever heard / (someone) tell / a donkey / story? /  
1 1 1 2 1  
I once heard / a story / (which) told / about a donkey. / This story /  
1 1 1 2 1  
happened / in China, / (and) was called / "Qian Zhi Lü," / which means /  
1 1 1 2 1  
"The Donkey / of / Guizhou Province." / (16/22)  
2 1 2

Paragraph 2:

In the southwestern / part / of China, / there is / a place / called /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
Guizhou. / Formerly, / there were no / donkeys / there. / Later on, /  
2 2 1 2 1 2  
someone / shipped / a donkey / to Guizhou / from / another place; /  
1 1 2 2 1 1  
but, / after / the donkey / was shipped, / because / the people /  
1 1 2 1 1 1  
still didn't know / what use / the donkey had, / therefore, /  
1 2 2 1  
all they could do / was release / it / at the foot of a mountain /  
1 2 1 2  
(and) let / it / graze / there. / (34/48)  
1 1 2 1

Paragraph 3:

A / little / tiger / saw (that) / the donkey / at the foot /  
1 1 2 1 2 2  
of the mountain / could only / extend / its two / hind legs / and kick /  
2 1 2 1 2 2  
wildly / (and) had no / other / ability; / thereupon, /  
1 1 1 2 2  
(he) gave a loud roar / and sprang / atop / the donkey / and ate up /  
2 2 1 2 2  
the donkey. / (26/37)  
2

Paragraph 4:

Over / 90% / of the people / have all / never / encountered / a tiger! /  
1 1 1 1 1 1 2 /  
Once / I passed through / a forest / (and) by chance / saw / an animal /  
1 1 2 2 1 1 /  
walking / toward / me. / That animal / seemed / very frightened. /  
1 1 1 1 1 1 /  
Afterwards, / that animal / gradually / walked over (toward me). /  
1 1 2 1 /  
I took a look / and indeed was / badly / frightened. / It turns out that /  
1 1 1 2 1 /  
it was a tiger. / I / had never / run into / a tiger / in the forest /  
2 1 1 2 2 2 /  
in the past, / (and) I thought, / "I certainly / can't provoke / it." /  
1 1 1 2 1 /  
I / hurriedly / ran away. / (40/57)  
1 2 2

Paragraph 5:

People / have all / rumored / that they have seen / a monster / walking /  
1 1 2 1 2 1 /  
back / and forth / in the forest / at the foot / of the mountain / behind /  
2 2 2 2 2 1 /  
my home. / One day / I purposely / hid / in the vicinity / of the foot /  
1 1 2 1 1 2 /  
of the mountain / to observe. / In fact, / there was no / activity /  
2 2 1 1 2 /  
in the forest, / and I also / didn't see / any / monster / come out. / I /  
2 1 1 1 2 1 1 /  
thereupon / used / my feet / to kick / several / trees / to see if, /  
2 1 2 2 1 1 1 /  
after all, / a monster / would / come out. / This / really (indeed) /  
2 2 1 1 1 1 /  
made / that monster / angry (provoked its anger), / and it / ran out /  
2 2 2 1 1 /  
and even / bumped into / my leg. / I thought / I bumped into / a monster, /  
1 2 2 1 2 2 /  
carefully / took a look / again, / (and) it turns out that / it / wasn't /  
2 1 1 1 1 1 /  
any / monster (after all), / it was / one of / my family's / sheep. /  
1 2 1 1 1 1 /  
(67/95)

Paragraph 6:

Formerly / there was / a peasant / in the village / called / Xie Ping. /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
His / size / was very small, / (and) everybody / all / called him /  
1 2 1 1 1 1  
"Xiao Gezi (Little Size)." / Afterwards, / because / everybody / all /  
2 1 1 1 1  
became accustomed to / calling him / "Xiao Gezi," / the people /  
2 1 2 1  
that called him / "Xie Ping," / on the contrary, / were very few. /  
1 1 2 1  
We all / knew / that people / of small size / didn't necessarily /  
1 1 1 2 1  
not have / ability. / Xie Ping's / ability / was very great / and he also /  
1 2 1 2 1 1  
very much / liked to / help / others, / so / everybody / all / liked /  
1 1 1 1 1 1 1  
him / very much. / (38/54)  
1 1

#### 第四课 我和小牛

我是上海的一个中学毕业生，到农村劳动锻炼已经一年多多了。

去年冬天，生产队让我去和贫农黄大叔一起喂小牛。小牛，我这个城市姑娘过去连见都没见过，更不用说喂它了。

开始，我特别害怕接近小牛，因为小牛喜欢舔人，身上还有味儿。我怕弄脏了衣服，总是躲得远远的。

但是，我发现黄大叔却不是这样。他不怕脏，不怕累，照顾小牛又耐心又细致。天冷了，他把草垫得厚厚的，让小牛暖暖和和地躺在上面。一天，一头小牛病了，黄大叔急得吃不下饭，睡不好觉，急忙请来兽医给小牛打针。打针的时候，小牛突然拉稀了。我嫌脏，就赶快躲开。黄大叔却一直在一旁照顾小牛。黄大叔的行动给了我很大的教育。

有一次，又有一头小牛病了，躺在地上一动也不动。我用手摸了摸小牛的嘴。啊！嘴已经凉了。我急得简直要哭起来，心里想：决不能让集体的财产受损失，一定要想办法把小牛救活。我就立刻跑去请来了兽医。我象黄大叔那样，小心地按住小牛，让兽医打针。兽医说：“要是再耽误一会儿，这小牛就完了。”打完针，小牛慢慢又能动了。我虽然很累，又弄了满身泥土，心里却非常高兴。

今年五月，我开始放牛了。为了让牛吃到好草，我每天都把牛赶到很远的地方去放。一次，突然刮起了大风，接着又下起了大雨。小牛受了惊，拼命乱跑。我急忙去追。追啊！追啊！一边追，一边叫。可是越追，小牛跑得越快。我一心只想着小牛，还是拼命地追。突然脚下一滑，我跌倒在地上，把腿摔伤了。我坚持着从地上爬起来，冒着大雨又追了二里多路，终于追上了小牛。回到家，我全身都湿透了。贫下中农知道以后纷纷来看我。他们的关怀给了我很大的鼓舞。

在贫下中农的耐心教育和热情帮助下，经过一年多的实践，我的思想感情有了很大的变化，同时也学到了不少生产知识。看着一头头小牛长大了，我感到真有说不出的愉快。

生词 New words

- |          |               |                        |
|----------|---------------|------------------------|
| 1. 牛     | (名) niú [头]   | ox, cow                |
| 2. 毕业生   | (名) bìyèshēng | graduate               |
| 3. 生产队   | shēngchǎn duì | production team        |
| 4. 贫农    | (名) pínóng    | poor peasant           |
| 5. 大叔    | (名) dàshū     | uncle                  |
| 6. 喂     | (动) wèi       | to feed, to tend       |
| 7. 城市    | (名) chéngshì  | city, town             |
| 8. 过去    | (名) guòqù     | past                   |
| 9. 接近    | (动) jiējìn    | to come close to       |
| 10. 舔    | (动) tiǎn      | to lick                |
| 11. 味儿   | (名) wèir      | smell, flavour, taste  |
| 12. 弄    | (动) nòng      | to do, to make, to get |
| 13. 脏    | (形) zāng      | dirty, filthy          |
| 14. 总(是) | (副) zǒng(shì) | always, constantly     |

- |           |               |                                   |
|-----------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| 15. 照顾    | (动) zhàogù    | to take care of                   |
| 16. 耐心    | (形, 名) nàixīn | patient, patience                 |
| 17. 细致    | (形) xìzhi     | meticulous, with meticulous care  |
| 18. 垫     | (动) diàn      | to litter down                    |
| 19. 让     | (动) ràng      | to let                            |
| 20. 急     | (形) jí        | to be anxious                     |
| 21. 睡觉    | shuì jiào     | to sleep                          |
| 22. 兽医    | (名) shòuyī    | veterinary surgeon                |
| 23. 拉稀    | lā xī         | to suffer from loose bowels       |
| 24. 嫌     | (动) xián      | to dislike, to object to          |
| 25. 一直    | (副) yízhí     | all the time, all along, straight |
| 26. 教育    | (动, 名) jiàoyù | to educate, education             |
| 27. 摸     | (动) mō        | to feel                           |
| 28. 嘴     | (名) zuǐ       | mouth                             |
| 29. 凉     | (形) liáng     | cold, cool                        |
| 30. 简直    | (副) jiǎnzhí   | simply, virtually                 |
| 31. 哭     | (动) kū        | to cry, to weep                   |
| 32. 心     | (名) xīn       | heart, mind                       |
| 33. 决不... | jué bù...     | in no way, by no means            |
| 34. 财产    | (名) cáichǎn   | property                          |



35. 象 (动) xiàng to be like, as
36. 小心 (形) xiǎoxīn careful
37. 按 (动) àn to press
38. 耽误 (动) dānwù to delay, to miss, to affect
39. 完 (动) wán to die, to be finished off
40. 泥 (名) ní mud
41. 土 (名) tǔ dust
42. 受惊 (动) shòu jīng to get a fright, to suffer a shock
43. 拚命 (动) pīn mìng like mad, exerting all one's strength
44. 追 (动) zhuī to run after, to pursue
45. 一心 (副) yīxīn to be bent on, wholeheartedly
46. 脚 (名) jiǎo [只] foot
47. 滑 (动、形) huá to slip, slippery
48. 跌 (动) diē to fall, to stumble
49. 摔 (动) shuāi to fall, to throw
50. 坚持 (动) jiānchí to insist on, to persist in
51. 爬起来 páqǐlái to pick oneself up, to get up
52. 冒 (动) mào to brave, to risk
53. 追上 zhuīshàng to overtake, to catch up

54. 下中农 (名) xiàzhōngnóng lower middle peasant
55. 纷纷 (形) fēnfēn one and all
56. 关怀 (动) guānhuái to be concerned
57. 鼓舞 (动) gǔwǔ to encourage, to inspire
58. 思想 (名) sīxiǎng thoughts
59. 感情 (名) gǎnqíng feelings
60. 同时 (名、连) tóngshí at the same time, meanwhile
61. 知识 (名) zhīshi knowledge
62. 愉快 (形) yúkuài pleasant

### 词语例解 Notes

#### 1. 不用说

用“不用说”表示不言而喻时,前后常有“连...也...”等呼应。例如:  
When “不用说” is used to mean “not to speak of” or “not to say...”, it is often accompanied by “连...也...”. E.g.

(1) 解放前,这个地方连小学也没有,更不用说中学了。

(2) 不用说这点困难,就是比这更大的困难我们也能克服。

#### 2. 弄

“弄”常用来表示一些不容易或不需要讲得具体的动作。例如:  
“弄” is often used to indicate an action which it is difficult or unnecessary to define. E.g.

(1) 这个句子的意思我还弄不清楚，请你给我讲讲。

(2) 我把他的电话号码弄错了。

(3) 我的收音机不响了，请你帮我弄弄。

“弄”还有设法取得的意思。例如：

“弄” also has the meaning of trying to get, e.g.

(4) 咱们去弄点水来吧。

### 3. 总是

“总是”有“经常”的意思，表示某种行动经常重复，或某种情况长期不变。“是”往往可以省略。例如：

“总是” means “经常”，indicating that an action constantly repeats itself or a certain state of affairs remains unchanged. “是” may often be omitted. E.g.

(1) 他每天总是第一个到车间。

(2) 我早就想来看你，可是总没有时间。

(3) 最近他总到我家里来玩儿。

### 4. 嫌

“嫌”的宾语一般是描写性的主谓结构，如果意思很明显，这个结构的主语可以省略。例如：

The object of “嫌” is usually a descriptive subject-predicate construction and if the meaning is obvious from the context, the subject may be omitted. E.g.

(1) 他嫌热，把窗户全打开了。

(2) 他嫌我讲得太快，让我讲慢一点儿。

### 5. 躲开

“开”作补语，表示人通过某动作离开某处，或使一事物离开某处。例如：

When “开” is used as a complement, it indicates that a person has left a place or a thing is moved away from a place. E.g.

(1) 要吃饭了，请你把桌上的东西拿开。

(2) 他们原来在这儿谈话，看见我们要学习，就走开了。

### 6. 一直

“一直”原来是不转弯的意思。例如：

The original meaning of “一直” is “straight”. E.g.

(1) 从咱们学校一直往南走，就是那个工厂了。

“一直”有时用来说明动作继续不断。例如：

Sometimes “一直” is used to indicate a continued action. E.g.

(2) 雪一直下了一天。

(3) 这次科学讨论会一直要开到下星期二。

### 二。

(4) 从一九五二年起，我一直在这个地方工作。

### 7. 简直

“简直”用来强调某种情况达到了极端的程度，有时带有夸张的口气。例如：

“简直” is an intensive expression to stress that something has

developed to an extraordinary degree and is sometimes followed by a more or less hyperbolic statement. E.g.

- (1) 这个展览会简直太好了。
- (2) 他说得太快了,我简直一点儿也没听懂。
- (3) 这个水库只用两三个月就建成了,这在过去简直连想也不敢想。

#### 8. 冒

“冒”常和“雨”、“风”、“雪”、“危险”等有限的几个名词构成动宾结构,作状语。“冒”有时也说成“冒着”。例如:

“冒” often forms a verb-object construction with such words as “雨”, “风”, “雪”, “危险”, etc., and it is used as an adverbial adjunct. Sometimes “冒着” is used instead of “冒”. E.g.

- (1) 一听说我们这里有十几个受伤的八路军战士,白求恩大夫就立刻冒雨赶来了。
- (2) 解放军同志冒着生命危险,从水里救出了那个孩子。

#### 9. 同时

- (1) 在学习新课的同时,我们还要注意复习旧课。
- (2) 这两座楼是一九六八年同时修建的。
- (3) 他是一个工人,同时也是一个运动员。

### 练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组: Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 接近群众 接近解决 接近完成  
接近完成
2. 满身 满脸 满屋子 满天  
满天
3. 耽误时间 耽误工作 耽误学习  
耽误休息

二、完成句子: Complete the following sentences:

1. 为了制造这种新产品,小张每天\_\_\_\_\_。  
(总是)
2. 我\_\_\_\_\_,想买一张大一点的。(嫌)
3. 中午,阿里\_\_\_\_\_,就到屋子外边去了。(嫌)
4. 大家干得很高兴,\_\_\_\_\_。(一直)
5. 我们学习中文,\_\_\_\_\_。(一直)
6. 请你\_\_\_\_\_,这里要放一架收音机。  
(拿开)
7. 汽车过来了,\_\_\_\_\_。(躲开)
8. 这个词的意思\_\_\_\_\_。(弄)
9. 这些报纸、杂志你看完以后\_\_\_\_\_。  
(弄)

10. 他屋子里虽然东西很多,但是\_\_\_\_\_。

(总)

11. 那个城市姑娘不怕脏不怕累,\_\_\_\_\_。

(一心)

12. 那个孩子\_\_\_\_\_。(一心)

三、造句: Make sentences with:

1. 不用说 2. 一直 3. 简直 4. 冒

5. 同时

四、把下列句子译成中文,用上括号里的词: Translate the following into Chinese, using the words in the brackets:

1. Father asked Haiwa to send the letter to Company

Leader Zhang without delay. (耽误)

2. He was ill, and missed his lessons for a few days. (耽误)

3. He speaks Chinese very fluently, just like a Chinese.

(简直)

4. These words are written so carelessly that they simply cannot be recognized. (简直)

五、复述课文。 Retell the text.



- c. 他决定在他死以前,把五分之四的财产送给那个医院。

He decided to present four-fifths of his property to that hospital before his death.

6. 耽 dān

BF: tarry, delay

耽误 dānwu

V: delay, interfere with, waste (time)

- a. 那个战士的伤很重,要是再耽误一会儿他就死了。

That soldier's wounds are very serious. If (there is) any further delay he will be dead.

- b. 老师对学生说:“不要耽误时候,好好学习。”

The teacher said to his students, "Do not waste time; study properly."

- c. 我不要耽误你工作,过几天我再来看你。

I don't want to interfere with your work. I'll be back to see you in a couple of days.

7. 跌 diē

V: fall, stumble

跌倒 diēdǎo

RC: fall down

- a. 我和小张在海边散步的时候,他故意推了我一下,我就跌进水里去了。

When I was taking a walk with Little Zhang along the beach, he pushed me purposely, and I fell into the water.

- b. 我小时候,母亲常对我说:“慢慢跑,不要跌倒了!”

When I was a child mother often said to me, "Run slowly. Don't fall down!"

8. 顾 gù

BF: look after, take care of

照顾 zhàogu

V: take care of

- a. 爸爸妈妈不在家的时候,总是大姐姐照顾我们。

When mom and dad aren't home, it's always eldest sister who takes care of us.

- b. 村长对我母亲说:“我非常感谢你替我照顾我的小孙子。”

The village chief said to my mother, "I am very grateful to you for taking care of my grandson."

- c. 有时候驴和羊比小孩子更难照顾, 因为他们都不会说话。

Sometimes donkeys and sheep are even more difficult to care for than children because they do not know how to talk.

9. 坚 jiān

BF: solid, firm, determined

坚持 jiānchí

V/A: insist, persist, persevere;  
stubbornly, persistently, insistently

- a. 我要当八路军打敌人, 可是爸爸坚持说我年纪小, 当不了。

I wanted to become an Eighth Route Army soldier and fight the enemy, but dad insists on saying that I am too young and incapable of becoming one.

- b. 弟弟把老师的钢笔丢了, 他要赔老师一枝新的, 但是老师坚持不要。

Younger brother lost the teacher's pen. He wanted to pay back the teacher with a new one, but the teacher insisted he didn't want it.

- c. 夏礼昨天来请我去看电影, 我要作练习, 所以不想去, 他坚持着拉我去。

Xia Li came yesterday to invite me to the movies. I wanted to do my (homework) exercises and so did not feel like going, but he insisted and dragged me there.

10. 惊 jīng

BF: frighten, startle

受惊 shòu jīng

VO: to be startled, get a fright, suffer a shock

- a. 小妹妹昨天受了惊病了。

Younger sister suffered a shock yesterday and became ill.

- b. 有一次小王在山脚下放羊, 忽然来了一只老虎, 他和羊都受了惊急忙逃走了。

Once Little Wang was tending sheep at the foot of the mountain, when suddenly there came a tiger. Both he and the sheep suffered a fright and hurriedly ran away.

11. 凉 liáng

SV: cool, cold

- a. 秋天到了, 天气渐渐地凉了。

Autumn is here the weather grows gradually cooler.

- b. 昨天晚上我小弟弟病了, 他的脸很热很红, 可是手很凉。

Last night my younger brother became ill. His face was very hot and very red, but his hands were very cold.

c. 饭和菜都快凉了赶快来吃吧。

Both the rice and vegetables (or dishes) will soon be cold. Let's hurry up and eat.

12.

冒

mào

V: brave, risk  
(see CR L.4, note #8)

a. 一位八路军战士冒着生命危险, 从水里救出了那个孩子。

Risking danger to his own life, an Eighth Route Army soldier rescued that child from the water.

b. 村长一听说山里有游击队员受伤了, 就立刻冒雪赶去了。

As soon as the village chief heard that there were injured guerrillas in the hills, he braved the snow and hurriedly went (there).

c. 我觉得冒着大雨开汽车很危险。

I feel that driving a car while braving heavy rains is very dangerous.

13.

耐

nài

BF: tolerate; patience, tolerance

耐心

nàixīn

SV/N: patient; patience

a. 因为我没有耐心, 所以没办法学修理收音机。

Since I do not have patience, therefore there is no way I can learn to repair radios.

b. 要把小孩子照顾好, 一定得有耐心。

To properly care for children, (you) must definitely have patience.

14.

泥

ní

N: mud

泥土

nítǔ

N: dirt, earth, soil

a. 很多小孩子都喜欢玩儿泥, 你小时候玩儿过泥吗?

There are many children who love to play with mud. Did you ever play with mud when you were young?

b. 为什么有的泥土是黑的, 有的泥土是黄的?

How come some dirt is black and some dirt is yellow?



15. 牛 niú N: ox, cow, bull, cattle (M: 头)
- a. 我们的小牛病了, 爸爸很着急。  
Our calf became sick, and Dad was very worried.
- b. 在中国的农村里牛的用处很大。  
Oxen are very useful in rural China.
- c. 海娃天天骑着牛去放羊。  
Hai Wa rode the ox each day to go tend her sheep.

16. 弄 nòng V: do, make, get, manipulate  
(see CR L.4, note #2)
- a. 小妹妹把我的屋子弄得很干净。  
Younger sister made my room very clean.
- b. 这节课语法很难, 老师讲了两次, 我还是弄不清楚。  
The grammar in this lesson is very hard. The teacher explained it twice but I still could not get it clear.
- c. 母亲说: “你们等一会儿, 我去弄点儿东西来吃。”  
Mother said, "You wait awhile, I'll go make something to eat."

17. 贫 pín SV/BF: poor
- 贫农 pínóng N: poor peasant (refers to a class or person of that class)
- a. 解放前中国贫农的生活苦极了。  
Before Liberation the livelihood of China's poor peasants was extremely bitter.
- b. 贫农不但没有自己的土地, 连吃的东西也不够。  
Not only did the poor peasants not possess their own land, they didn't even have enough to eat.

18. 却 què A: yet, but, still, on the other hand
- a. 敌人来了, 却没强迫我们劳动。  
The enemy came, yet didn't force us to work.
- b. 我们都要学习中文, 他却要学习法文。  
We all want to study Chinese, but he wants to study French.
- c. 他没进过学校, 却很有本事。  
He hasn't gone to school, still (he is) very capable.

19. 摔 shuāi V: fall, throw down, break  
 摔倒 shuāidǎo RC: fall down, slip and fall  
 摔伤 shuāishāng RC: get hurt in a fall
- a. 母亲常对他们的小孩子说：“慢慢跑，别摔倒了！”  
 Mothers often say to their children, "Run slowly; don't fall!"
- b. 我去年滑雪把右腿摔伤了，在医院住了两个月。  
 Last year while I was skiing, I fell and hurt my right leg. I stayed in the hospital for two months.
- c. 一个病人从很高的楼跳下来，摔死了。  
 A patient jumped from a very tall building. He fell to his death.

20. 味(儿) wèi(r) N: smell, odor; flavor, taste
- a. 我 很 不 喜 欢 牛 和 羊 身 上 的 味 儿。  
 I do not like the odor from the bodies of cattle and sheep.
- b. 医 院 和 病 房 都 有 药 味 儿。  
 Both hospitals and wards have medicinal smells.
- c. 这 个 菜 的 味 儿 最 好，是 谁 做 的？  
 This dish's flavor is best. Who made it?
- d. 你 吃 得 出 来 这 个 糖 是 什 么 味 儿 的 吗？  
 Can you make out what flavor this candy is?

21. 愉 yú BF: happy, pleased  
 愉快 yúkuài N/SV/A: pleasure; pleasant, happy; pleasantly
- a. 解 放 后 贫 农 的 生 活 渐 渐 地 好 了，我 们 真 有 说 不 出 的 愉 快。  
 The livelihood of poor peasants improved gradually after Liberation. We really feel inexpressible pleasure in this.
- b. 中 国 人 写 信 最 后 常 写 “祝 你 健 康 愉 快”。  
 When Chinese write letters, they often write at the end of their letters "Wishing you health and happiness."
- c. 我 爸 爸 被 选 做 工 厂 的 领 导 干 部，我 们 都 非 常 愉 快。  
 My father was elected leading cadre for the factory. We were extraordinarily happy.

22. 育 yù BF: educate, raise, nurture

教育 jiàoyù V/N: to educate; education

a. 这个电影给了我很大的教育。

This movie educated me a great deal.

b. 在李老师的耐心教育和热情帮助下，  
我的中文有了很大的进步。

Under Teacher Li's patient education and enthusiastic help there has been a great deal of improvement in my Chinese.

c. 每一个人都得受九年的教育。

Each person has to receive nine years of education.

23. 致 zhì BF: fine, delicate, minute

细致 xìzhì SV: meticulous, with meticulous care

a. 我母亲又耐心又细致的照顾我们。

Mother patiently and meticulously cared for us.

b. 我姐姐很有耐心，所以做什么都很细致。

My elder sister is very patient. Therefore she is meticulous in everything she does.

c. 工厂做出来的衣服都不太细致。

None of the factory-made clothes are too meticulously (made).

24. 追 zhūi V: run after, chase after, pursue

追上 zhūishang RC: catch up with

a. 一个外国人买了东西没等找钱就走了，  
售货员赶快追他，把零钱给他了。

After buying things, a foreigner left without waiting for his change. The salesman hurriedly chased after him and gave him his change.

b. 一头小牛跑了，我立刻追，一边追一边叫，  
可是越追小牛跑得越快。

A calf ran off and I chased after it immediately. I yelled as I chased, but the more I chased the calf, the faster the calf ran.

c. 他跑得太快，我追了半天没追上。

He ran too fast. I chased him for a long time but never caught up with him.

d. 日本工业发展得很快，许多国家追不上它。

Japanese industry developed very rapidly. Many countries can not catch up with her.

C. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

25. 毕业生 biyèshēng

N: graduate

- a. 这个学校的毕业生大概都派到外国去工作吧。

I suppose most of the graduates from this school have been sent to foreign countries to work.

- b. 大学毕业生比中学毕业生少得多。

There are a lot fewer college graduates than high school graduates.

- c. 中国的中学毕业生都得到农村去劳动锻炼。

All high school graduates in China have to temper themselves through manual labor in the rural communities.

26. 城市 chéngshì

N: city, town, urban center

- a. 上海北京都是中国的大城市。

Both Shanghai and Beijing are large cities of China.

- b. 一个贫农说：“我今年七十岁了，还没到城市去过呢。”

A poor peasant said, "I'm 70 years old this year, but I have never been to the city yet."

- c. 在城市住惯了的人，不喜欢到农村去工作。

Those who are accustomed to living in cities do not like going to work in rural communities.

27. 感情 gǎnqíng

N: feelings, friendly feelings.

- a. 他好象对谁都没感情。

He seems to be without feelings for anybody.

- b. 小王因为和他爸爸的感情不好，所以离开家了。

Since feelings between Little Wang and his father were bad, he therefore left home.

- c. 有的学生对这个学校很有感情，毕业以后还常回来看看。

Some students have friendly feelings towards this school. They often come back to look around after graduation.

28. 鼓舞 gǔwǔ

N/V: encouragement; encourage, inspire

- a. 小八路军的故事, 给了我很大的鼓舞。  
The story of the Little Eighth Route Army Soldier gave me a lot of encouragement.
- b. 电影《红色娘子军》给了我很大的教育和鼓舞。  
The movie "Red Detachment of Women" gave me a great deal of education and encouragement.
- c. 我们应该想办法鼓舞战士们勇敢地消灭敌人。  
We should think of some way to inspire our soldiers into bravely annihilating the enemy.

29. 关怀 guānhuái

N/V: concern; be concerned about, concerned for

- a. 谢谢你对我们的关怀。  
Thank you for your concern for us.
- b. 毛主席非常关怀中国人民的生活。  
Chairman Mao is most concerned for the livelihood of the Chinese people.
- c. 世界各地的中国留学生都很关怀他们国家各方面的情况。  
Chinese students studying abroad everywhere in the world are very concerned about every aspect of conditions in their country.

30. 过去 guòqù

MA/N: in the past, formerly

- a. 中国在建设上有了很多新成就, 和过去不一样了。  
There have been many new achievements in China's (re)construction. This is different from the past.
- b. 他很不喜欢讲他过去的事情。  
He dislikes very much talking about his past.
- c. 过去这个城没有高大的建筑。  
In the past this city didn't have large buildings.

31. 急 jí

SV: to be anxious, worried

- a. 我带弟弟去滑冰, 他忽然摔倒了, 脸上有很多血, 我急得不知道怎么办。  
I took younger brother ice skating. Suddenly he fell down, and there was a lot of blood on his face. I was so worried that I did not know what to do.

- b. 你在医院才住了两天, 怎么就急着要出院呢?

You've lived in the hospital for only two days. How come you are anxious to be discharged from the hospital?

- c. 老师说: "不要急, 等我讲完了再问问题"

The teacher said, "Don't be anxious. Wait until I finish explaining before asking questions."

32. 接近 jiējìn

SV/V: be close to; come close to, approach

- a. 过去我很怕接近小牛, 渐渐地习惯了, 就不怕了。

In the past I was very scared of getting close to calves. Gradually I became accustomed to it, and I am no longer afraid.

- b. 如果我不跟贫农接近, 就没办法了解他们的生活情况。

If I do not get close to the poor peasants, there would be no way of finding out their living conditions.

- c. 连长说: "等敌人接近我们的据点再开枪。"

The Company Commander said, "Wait until the enemy comes close to our fortified point, then fire."

33. 经过 jīngguo

V/N: experience, undergo, go through, happen (can often be translated as "through," or "having/having had" + verb of clause); experiences, past

- a. 这两个复杂的句子经过李老师耐心地分析以后, 我们立刻就懂了。

After Teacher Li had patiently analyzed these two complicated sentences, we immediately understood them.

- b. 生产队派我到农村去劳动, 经过一年多的实践我学到了很多生产知识。

The production team sent me to labor in rural communities. Through a year of practice I learned a great deal of production knowledge.

- c. 经过仔细地观察敌人的动静以后, 我就立刻回来了。

After having meticulously observed the movements of the enemy, I immediately returned.

34. 决 jué BF: decidedly (preceeds 不 + verb)

决不... jué bù ... A: decidedly no ..., by no means ...,  
in no way ...

a. 在中国, 孩子决不能叫爸爸妈妈  
的名字。

In China, children definitely cannot call their parents  
(by their) names.

b. 老师决不可以打学生。

Teachers definitely cannot beat their students.

c. 我们一定要想办法, 决不能让集  
体的财产受损失。

We surely have to think of some way out, I definitely can't  
let collective property suffer damages.

35. 劳动 锻炼 láodòng duànliàn N/V: labor tempering; to temper oneself  
through manual labor, undergo labor  
tempering

36. 满 mǎn SV: all over; full

满街 mǎnjiē Ph: all over the street

满身 mǎnshēn Ph: all over the body (one's body)

昨天夜里又刮大风, 又下大雨, 所  
以满街都是泥。

Last night there was a big wind and heavy rainfall,  
therefore there was mud all over the street.

37. 爬起来 páqilai RC: pick oneself up, get to one's feet

a. 我追小牛的时候, 滑倒了, 我立刻  
爬起来又继续追。

I slipped and fell down when I was chasing the calf. I  
immediately got up and continued chasing (it).

- b. 昨天晚上睡得太晚了, 今天早上真爬不起来。

I went to sleep quite late last night. This morning I really was unable to get up.

- c. 冬天小孩子穿的衣服太厚了, 摔倒了自己爬不起来。

In the winter the clothing the children wear is too thick. (Once) they fall down they cannot get up by themselves.

38. 请来 qǐng lái

V: ask ... to come, send for  
(generally used in written materials)

急忙请来医生给父亲看病。

Hurry and send for the doctor to look at (check) father.

39. 生产队 shēngchǎn duì

N: production team

- a. 今年生产队的生产水平比去年提高了。

The production level of the production team this year has been raised from that of last year.

- b. 我爸爸被选作生产队的干部。

My father was elected a leading cadre of the production team.

- c. 这种新产品是我们生产队研究出来的, 非常受欢迎。

This new product was the result of research by our production squad.

40. 完 wán/-wán

RVE/V: to die, to be finished, to be done for

完了! wánle!

IE: (expression of exasperation: Alas! Oh, no! etc.)

- a. 我们快把他送到医院去, 要是再耽误一会儿, 他就完了。

Let's hurry up and send him to hospital. If there is further delay he will be done for.

- b. 完了, 完了! 我们村子已经被敌人包围了。

Alas, Alas! Our village has been surrounded by the enemy.

- c. 解放后, 反对共产党的人都完了。

After liberation, those who opposed the communist party were all done for.



41. 下中农 xiàzhōngnóng

N: lower middle peasant (refers to a class or person of that class)

贫下中农 pínxiàzhōngnóng

N: poor and lower middle peasants

a. 下中农的生活水平和贫农差不多。

The standard of living of the lower middle peasants was similar to that for poor peasants.

b. 下中农虽然有一点土地,可是粮食还是不够吃。

Although lower middle peasants have some land, yet the grain is still insufficient to feed them.

c. 在贫下中农的耐心教育下,我学到了不少生产方面的事情。

Under the patient education of the poor and lower middle peasants I learned a great deal concerning aspects of production.

42. 一心 yìxīn

A: to be bent on, wholeheartedly, with all one's heart

a. 他一心只想着为人民服务,自己家里的事情什么都不注意了。

Thinking wholeheartedly of only serving the people, he did not pay any attention to things in his own home.

b. 他一心要到美国来研究,所以拼命地学英文。

He was bent on coming to America to do research. Therefore he did his best to study English.

c. 我们要一心消灭敌人,什么危险都不怕。

We must wholeheartedly annihilate the enemy. We must not be afraid of any danger.

43. 一直 yìzhí

A: all the time (up until a certain point), all along, straight (see CR L.4, note #6)

a. 李老师从大学毕业以后,一直在这个学校工作。

Since his graduation from college, professor Li has all along been teaching at this school.

b. 一直到一九四九年我才离开北京。

It was not until 1949 that I left Beijing.

c. 从这里一直往北走,就到自行车制造厂了。

Go straight north from here. You will then reach the bicycle manufactory.

II. Additional Vocabulary

1. 大叔 dàshū N: uncle (honorific form of address for older men)
- a. 黄大叔是一个贫农, 他的心很好, 对朋友很热情。  
Uncle Huang is a poor peasant. He is goodhearted, and very cordial toward his friends.
- b. 解放后, 张大叔的财产都完了。  
After Liberation, all of Uncle Zhang's property was finished (confiscated).
2. 垫 diàn N/V: pad, cushion, lay down (something), put under, raise or make even by padding, cushioning, filling
- a. 天冷了, 母亲把床垫得厚厚的, 让我们睡得暖和一点儿。  
After the days grew cold, mother padded the bed until it was very thick. This permitted us warmer sleeping.
- b. 我们门前边, 一下雨就有泥和水, 爸爸用土垫高了以后就好一点了。  
In front of our doorway there is water and mud as soon as it rains. Father filled (the place) with dirt and it became better.
3. 纷纷 fēnfēn A: one and all, profuse, numerous and disorderly
- a. 我们的连长受伤了, 流了很多血, 朋友们知道了都纷纷来看他, 给他输血。  
Our Company Commander was injured and lost a lot of blood. When friends heard about this, one and all they came over to visit him and offer him blood.
- b. 大雪纷纷下, 地上、树上、屋顶上都是白的, 显得非常干净。  
Heavy snow fell profusely. The ground, rooftops and trees were all white. (Everything) seemed extremely clean.
4. 拉稀 lā xī V: suffer from loose bowels (lit. discharge thin fluid)
- a. 弟弟一定吃了什么不干净的东西, 拉稀了。  
Younger brother definitely ate something unclean. He has loose bowels.

b. 他昨天夜里拉稀了, 连觉也没睡好。

Last night he had loose bowels. He wasn't even able to sleep well.

5. 摸 mō V: feel, touch, grope

a. 博物馆的东西不要用手去摸。

Do not touch items in the museum with your hands.

b. 我记得很清楚把钱藏在衣服里了, 可是摸了半天, 没摸着。

I remember very clearly that I hid the money inside my clothes. But after groping about for a long time I was unable to find it.

6. 兽 shòu BF: beast, animal

兽医 shòuyī N: veterinarian

a. 有一头小牛病了, 我立刻跑去请兽医来给小牛看病。

One of the calves got sick. I ran immediately to fetch the veterinarian to attend to the calf.

b. 我们生产队的兽医黄大叔给牛看病很有经验。

Uncle Huang, the production team veterinarian, is very experienced in treating cattle.

7. 舔 tiǎn V: lick

a. 小弟弟吃了糖以后, 总舔他的手。

After younger brother eats candy he always licks his hands.

b. 小牛很喜欢舔人, 把你的腿、脚和手都舔湿了。

Calves like to lick people. They will moisten (by licking) your legs, feet and hands.

8. 喂 wèi V: feed, tend

a. 过去我一直住在城市里, 连牛都没见过, 更不用说喂牛了。

In the past I had always lived in the city. I had never even seen an ox, not to mention feeding one. (see CR L.4, note #1)

b. 一位战士两只手都受伤了, 自己不能吃饭, 所以得喂他。

A soldier had both his hands injured. He was unable to eat his meals by himself, so somebody had to feed him.

9. 嫌 xián V: dislike, detest; object, complain  
(see CR L.4, note #4)

- a. 如果你嫌这个屋子热,你可以把窗户和门全打开。  
If you object that this room is hot, you can open all the doors and windows.
- b. 我嫌船慢,所以决定坐飞机到上海去。  
I object to boats being too slow, so I have decided to go to Shanghai by plane.

10. 脏 zāng SV: dirty, filthy

- a. 我嫌牛脏,所以害怕接近它。  
I detest dirty oxen, so I am scared to get close to them.
- b. 我跑得太快,脚下一滑,跌倒了,把衣服也弄脏了。  
I ran too fast. My foot slipped, and I fell down and got my clothes dirty.

11. 嘴 zuǐ N: mouth

- a. 有的人嘴里说的和心里想的不一样。  
Some people say one thing (with their mouths) and think another (with their minds/hearts).
- b. 那个病人的嘴动了动,好象要说话,可是没说出来就死了。  
There was a (slight) movement in the mouth of that patient. He seemed to want to talk, but he said nothing and died.

PRACTICE EXERCISES

I. Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passages and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

Paragraph 1:

一泥刚是远想不边这大然着东  
有有人都远我我一么,起虽冒包  
边没么面面的。我什下上来,这  
旁面什里前常丢他。为然地起了。  
路外是象见非心追道突在爬上  
看见,定好看,得小命知候,倒着追  
看一摸,看走不拼不时跌持于  
上来脏,一路,他就志!个滑,坚终  
路起弄了了走是情同这一是追的。  
在捡没摸看,在定事志!下还前丢  
我我也手围人一的一同不脚腿,往他  
天西,儿用周个西他叫听我直是  
昨天东点再向一东误边志了,伤一然  
包一的。我有包耽一同来摔雨果  
小土,丢钱的。这能追,位雨我大西

Paragraph 2:

我我我是儿还  
 去,让总味且  
 过儿,牛的而  
 牛味见上牛,  
 头的看身近  
 几上一牛接  
 好身我对怕  
 有牛以我不  
 队为所在但  
 生产因惯,现不  
 我们生牛习的,了.  
 我接近不远惯放  
 我接很远远习欢  
 不敢得得经喜  
 不觉躲得已经喜  
 最

Paragraph 3:

学点知终情认给  
 大一么我感的都  
 个直什炼,和作顾,  
 一简有锻想工照  
 是农没动思对的  
 娘中是劳的们羊  
 姑下都的,我他牛  
 市贫们多时化,对  
 城对他年同变怀,舞.  
 一个我为了一的关鼓  
 是过去以过他们大的的  
 是过解,经他们很大的  
 我生了人,解了他很志大  
 毕业不的,解了同很  
 毕都识于都真,了我

Paragraph 4:

病起这  
 牛哭着  
 头要想  
 一直只  
 有简心  
 队得一  
 生产急我  
 生我觉  
 我们天睡  
 我一没  
 期那上  
 星的那上  
 上病个  
 了牛一  
 来.

头小牛。我决不能让我们生产队的财产受损失。那几天我一直耐心细致地照顾这头牛。终于牛的病完全好了。我心里真有说不出的愉快。

Paragraph 1:

1. Where did the person find a small package?
2. What was the condition of the package?
3. What seemed to be in the package?
4. Whom might the package belong to?
5. How did he lose the package?
6. What action did the finder take?
7. What happened when the rain suddenly started pouring down?

8. What did the person do in spite of the leg injury?

Paragraph 2:

9. Who owned the cattle?

10. What was the writer's attitude toward cattle in the past?

11. Why?

12. What did the writer do whenever seeing cattle?

13. What is the writer's attitude toward cattle now?

Paragraph 3:

14. As a city girl and a college graduate, what did she think of the poor and lower middle class peasants?

15. What underwent very big changes after labor tempering?



6. What three things of the poor and lower middle class peasants gave her a great deal of inspiration?

Paragraph 4:

7. How did she react on the day when one of the cattle got sick?
8. What happened that night?
9. What decision did she make?
20. Describe the manner of her caring for the animal?
21. How did she feel when the animal completely recovered?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.

<u>Answer Key:</u>	<u>Score</u>
1. on the <u>roadside</u> 2	2
2. no <u>dirt</u> , <u>wasn't dirty at all</u> 2 2	4
3. <u>money</u> 1	1
4. the man <u>who was walking</u> <u>at a distance</u> 1 2	3
5. <u>wasn't careful</u> 1	1
6. <u>chased</u> him <u>like mad</u> 2 1	3
7. <u>foot slipped</u> , and <u>fell down</u> on the <u>ground</u> 2 2 2 1	7
8. <u>persisted</u> in <u>getting up</u> and <u>braved</u> the <u>heavy rain</u> , and <u>chased</u> and 2 2 2 1 2 <u>caught up with him</u> 2	11
9. the <u>production team</u> 2	2
10. <u>didn't dare get close</u> to them 1 2	3
11. <u>wasn't used to the odor</u> of <u>cattle</u> 2 2 2	6
12. <u>always avoided</u> (them) <u>at a great distance</u> 1 2 2	5
13. <u>accustomed to the odor</u> of <u>cattle</u> . <u>Not only that</u> , also has <u>no fear</u> 2 2 2 1 1 of <u>getting/being close</u> to <u>cattle</u> ; <u>moreover</u> , likes to <u>tend</u> them 2 2 1 2 <u>most of all</u> 1	16
14. that they were <u>people</u> <u>without any knowledge</u> 1 1 2	4
15. <u>thoughts</u> and <u>feelings</u> 1 2	3
16. <u>coscientiousness</u> about <u>work</u> , <u>concern</u> for <u>comrades</u> , <u>caring</u> for 2 1 2 1 2 <u>cattle and sheep</u> 2	10
17. <u>so worried</u> that she almost <u>began crying</u> 2 1	3
18. <u>didn't sleep</u> as she had her mind <u>wholeheartedly</u> on the <u>calf</u> 1 2 2	5

	<u>Score</u>
9. <u>could not</u> <u>allow</u> <u>production team</u> <u>property</u> to <u>suffer</u> a <u>loss</u> 1            1            2            2            1            1	8
0. <u>patient</u> and <u>meticulous</u> 2                    2	4
1. she felt <u>inexpressible</u> <u>pleasure</u> 1                    2	3

---

Total: 104

Passing: 73

II. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

1. 我们生产队里  
有四个青年是  
从大城市来的。  
他们中间有三  
个是中学毕业  
生，一个是大学  
毕业生。他们到  
了生产队以后，  
队里的贫下中  
农都非常热情  
地帮助他们，耐  
心地教育他们。  
经过了三年来的  
劳动锻炼，他  
们除了原来的  
知识以外，还学  
到了不少生产

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

知识。

2. 小王是北京人，以后他到中学去，连过，劳动锻炼，这中学连过，大城市生，过去，连过，牛都在队里喂牛，他产住在贫农马大叔家，照顾自己，象照顾那样，又耐心，又细致。

3. 贫农李大的叔是医生，因为他都跟牛和羊接近，所以他的衣服总是很脏。



多了,她高兴地  
简直要跳起来。

5. 张大叔八十岁  
了。昨天他走路  
不小心,脚一滑,  
跌倒了。把腿摔  
伤了,躺在地上  
不能动了。社员  
们纷纷跑去。看  
他。有人摸一摸  
他的嘴,有人摸  
一摸他的手。嘴  
很热,可是手很  
凉。有人说,不能  
耽误了,必须立  
刻请大夫来。可  
是生产队没有大  
兽医,怎么办呢?  
有些人急得直  
哭起来。





惊跑了社员们，  
 冒着风雨去追，  
 可是没有追上。  
 可大家都以为牛  
 完了。我心里想：  
 牛是生产队的  
 财产，决不能让  
 集体损失。一定  
 要追回。风一个  
 人冒着风雨三个  
 人坚持追了最后  
 小时，终于看见  
 追上。我躺在泥  
 土里，牛爬起来  
 想爬起来。我小  
 心按住牛，拚命  
 把绳子一拉，牛  
 终于爬起来，象  
 舔一舔我，好象  
 向我表示感谢。

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.

KEY - Model Translations:Paragraph 1:

In our / production team / there were / 4 / young persons /  
 1 2 1 1 1  
who came from the big cities. / Among them, / 3 / were / high school /  
 1 1 1 1 1  
graduates / (and) 1 / was a / college / graduate. / After / they / arrived /  
 2 1 1 1 2 1 1 1  
at the production team, / all / the poor and lower / middle peasants /  
 2 1 2 2  
of the team / very / enthusiastically / helped / them / (and) patiently /  
 2 1 2 1 1 2  
educated / them. / Through / 3 years / of labor tempering, / besides /  
 2 1 2 1 2 1  
their / previous / knowledge, / they / also / learned / a great deal /  
 1 1 2 1 1 1 1  
about production (lit. a great deal of production knowledge). / (39/55)  
 2

Paragraph 2:

Little Wang / is from Beijing. / After / he graduated / from high school, /  
 1 1 1 2 1  
he came / to us / to temper (himself through) manual training. /  
 1 1 2  
In the past, / high school / graduates / in this big city / have not /  
 2 1 2 2 1  
even / seen / cattle, / (but) now, / in our production team, /  
 1 1 2 1 2  
(he is) tending / the cattle. / He / is living / in the home /  
 2 2 1 1 1  
of poor peasant / Uncle Ma. / Uncle Ma / seems to / take care of him /  
 2 2 2 1 2  
like taking care of / his own / relative, / both patiently / and meticulously. /  
 2 1 2 2 2  
 (35/50)

Paragraph 3:

Poor peasant / Uncle Li / is the veterinarian / of the production team. /  
 2 2 2 2  
Because / from dawn / to dusk / he is close to / the cattle / and sheep, /  
 1 1 1 2 2 2  
his clothes, / therefore, / are always / very dirty, / (and) his body /  
 1 1 1 2 1  
always / has an odor. / Although / Little Zhang, / who came from the city /  
 1 2 1 1 1

(to undergo) labor tempering, / is living / in Uncle Li's home, / yet /  
he objects to / Uncle Li's / clothes / being dirty, / (and) objects to /  
Uncle Li's / body / having an odor, / (and he) never / likes /  
to come close to / Uncle Li. / (39/55)

Paragraph 4:

Several days ago, / because / the weather / was too hot, / I didn't /  
put anything under (me) / when I went to sleep, / (and) as a result /  
I became sick / and suffered from loose bowels. / (When my) mother /  
found out / I was sick, / it made her very worried. / She wholeheartedly /  
wished / that my sickness / would soon be better, / and therefore /  
(she) couldn't eat, / couldn't sleep well, / (and she was) by my side /  
all the time, / taking care of me. / Yesterday, / my sickness /  
was much better, / (and) she was so happy / (that she) simply /  
wanted to / start jumping. / (28/39)

Paragraph 5:

Uncle Zhang / is 80 years old. / Yesterday, /  
when he was walking on the road, / he was careless, / his foot slipped /  
and he fell down. / He hurt his leg(s) in the fall, / and lay /  
on the ground / unable to move. / The commune members, / one and all, /  
ran over to see him. / Someone / felt / his mouth / and someone / felt /  
his hands. / His mouth / was very hot, / but his hands / were very cold.  
Someone said / (we) could not delay, / and must / immediately / send for /  
a doctor. / But / the production team / only / had a / veterinarian /

and no doctor . / What was to be done? / Some people / were so worried /  
 1 1 1 2  
that they simply / wanted to cry. / (41/58)  
 2 1

Paragraph 6:

The poor and lower / middle peasants / of the production team / all /  
 2 2 2 1  
like / Little Wang / very much. / When he was sick, / everybody /  
 1 1 1 1 1  
one and all / would go to see him. / When he made a mistake, / everybody /  
 2 1 1 1  
would always / very patiently / help him. / The concern /  
 1 2 1 2  
(shown) for Little Wang / by the poor and lower / middle peasants /  
 1 2 2  
gave / Little Wang / great / inspiration. / Under the patient / education /  
 1 1 1 2 2 2  
and enthusiastic / help / of the poor and lower / middle peasants, /  
 2 1 2 2  
Little Wang's / thoughts / and feelings / have undergone / a great change. /  
 1 1 2 2 1  
The poor and lower / middle peasants / saw / Little Wang's / progress, /  
 2 2 1 1 1  
and in everybody's heart / there was / inexpressible / pleasure. / (45/64)  
 1 1 2 2

Paragraph 7:

One day, / because of a storm, / one / of the production team's / oxen /  
 1 2 1 2 2  
was frightened / and ran (away). / Members of the commune / braved /  
 2 1 1 2  
the storm / and gave chase, / but did not / catch up with (the ox). /  
 2 2 1 2  
Everybody / thought that / the ox / was done for. / In my mind, / I thought: /  
 1 1 2 2 1 1  
"The ox / is the property / of the production team, /  
 2 2 2  
and I definitely cannot / allow / the property / of the collective /  
 2 1 2 1  
to suffer damage. / I certainly / will chase after / and return / the ox." /  
 1 1 2 1 2  
I alone / braved / the storm / and perseveringly / gave chase /  
 1 2 2 2 2  
for three hours, / and finally, / at last, / I caught up with it. /  
 1 1 2 2

I<sub>1</sub> saw / the<sub>2</sub> ox / lying<sub>1</sub> / in<sub>2</sub> the<sub>2</sub> mud / trying<sub>2</sub> to<sub>2</sub> get<sub>2</sub> up, /  
but it couldn't get up. / I<sub>1</sub> carefully / restrained<sub>2</sub> / the<sub>2</sub> ox, / and<sub>2</sub> pulled /  
the<sub>2</sub> rope / like<sub>1</sub> mad, / and<sub>1</sub> finally / the<sub>2</sub> ox / got<sub>2</sub> up, / and<sub>2</sub> licked me, /  
and<sub>1</sub> it<sub>1</sub> seemed<sub>1</sub> that / he<sub>1</sub> was<sub>1</sub> showing / his<sub>2</sub> thanks / to<sub>1</sub> me. / (67/95)

## 第五课 “长工屋”

王国福是北京郊区红星人民公社一个生产队的队长。解放以前，他十二岁就被迫给地主当长工。

解放以后王国福翻了身，当了干部。他和其他干部一起带领群众，坚决走社会主义道路，打击了敌人一次又一次的破坏活动，自力更生，发展生产，受到了贫下中农的赞扬。

王国福既领导大家积极发展集体生产，同时又很关心社员的生活。他看到队里有一些社员住的房子还很破，就带领大家烧砖种树，准备给社员盖新房子。

随着生产的不断发展，王国福发动社员互相帮助，盖起了不少新房。但是他一家六口人，却一直住在一间又破又小的屋子里。这是解放以前长工住的，人们都叫它“长工屋”。大家劝王国福也盖几间新房，他却说：

“住上新房，的确很舒服，可是下雨天就容易忘记阶级兄弟。等全村贫下中农都住上了新房，才轮到我呢。”

一年夏天，一连下了几天雨。有一夜，雨越下越大，王国福住的“长工屋”漏雨了。他想起了还没住上新房子的阶级兄弟，立刻冒着雨到各家去查看。一个六十多岁的贫农老大娘子漏得很厉害，王国福一进去，就拉住她的手说：“大娘，这里住不得了，快跟我走。”说着，王国福背起老大娘就走，把她送到一个住上新房子的社员家里。老大娘激动得流下了眼泪。就这样，在大雨里，王国福从这家走到那家，最后连自己披的一块塑料布也盖在一家社员的房顶上。他一夜没睡，天一亮，又跟社员一起到地里排水去了。

队里生产一天天发展，社员生活一天天提高，到一九六九年春天，全村的贫下中农都住上了新房，可是王国福还是住在那间又小又破的“长工屋”里。社员们都心疼地对他

说：“你为我们盖新房，心都操碎了。现在该

轮到你盖了吧！”王国福笑笑说：“当干部就是要拉车不坐车。多住几年破房，一样干革命。”

### 生词 New words

- |        |                |                                       |
|--------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. 长工  | (名) chánggōng  | hired farm hand                       |
| 2. 郊区  | (名) jiāoqū     | suburbs, suburban district            |
| 3. 被迫  | bèi pò         | to be forced, to be compelled         |
| 4. 地主  | (名) dìzhǔ      | landlord                              |
| 5. 翻身  | fān shēn       | to be emancipated                     |
| 6. 其他  | (代) qítā       | other                                 |
| 7. 带领  | (动) dàilǐng    | to lead                               |
| 8. 坚决  | (形) jiānjué    | resolute                              |
| 9. 道路  | (名) dàolù      | road                                  |
| 10. 打击 | (动) dǎjī       | to deal a blow to                     |
| 11. 破坏 | (动) pòhuài     | to destroy, to undermine, to sabotage |
| 12. 赞扬 | (动) zànyáng    | to praise                             |
| 13. 房子 | (名) fángzi [间] | house                                 |
| 14. 破  | (形) pò         | tumble-down (house), worn out, broken |
| 15. 烧  | (动) shāo       | to burn, to bake (bricks)             |

16. 准备	(动) zhǔnbèi	to prepare, to get ready
17. 盖	(动) gài	to build, to cover
18. 随	(动) suí	following
19. 发动	(动) fādòng	to mobilize, to arouse, to launch
20. 口	(名、量) kǒu	mouth, a <i>measure word</i>
21. 的确	(副) díquè	indeed, certainly
22. 舒服	(形) shūfǔ	comfortable
23. 忘记	(动) wàngjì	to forget
24. 阶级	(名) jiējí	class
25. 兄弟	(名) xiōngdì	brother
26. 轮到	lúndào	to be one's turn
27. 漏	(动) lòu	to leak
28. 查看	(动) chákàn	to inspect
29. 老大娘	(名) lǎodàniáng	grannie
30. 厉害	(形) lìhài	terrible, terribly, very hard
31. 背	(动) bēi	to carry on one's back
32. 激动	(动) jīdòng	to be greatly affected, to be moved
33. 眼泪	(名) yǎnlèi	tears
34. 披	(动) pī	to throw on one's shoulders
35. 塑料	(名) sùliào	plastic

36. 布	(名) bù	cloth
37. 排水	pái shuǐ	to drain
38. 心疼	(动) xīnténg	affectionate
39. 操心	cāo xīn	to spare no pains
40. 碎	(形) suì	broken in pieces (“心都操碎了” is an intensive way of saying “操心”)
41. 该	(助动) gāi	ought

专名 Proper name

王国福 Wáng Guófú Wang Kuo-fu, name of a person

词语例解 Notes

1. 随着

“随着”往往和一些词语组成动宾结构,在句中作状语。例如:  
“随着” usually forms a verb-object construction with a word or phrase to serve as an adverbial adjunct. E.g.

- (1) 随着生产的发展,人民的生活水平也提高了。
- (2) 随着思想感情的变化,这个城市姑娘更加热爱农村了。

2. 想起

“起”作补语是“起来”的意思。课文中“盖起了不少新房”和“背



起老大娘”两句中的“起”都是“起来”的原来的意思。“想起”的“起”是“起来”的一个引申用法。这种用法一般表示事物出现于记忆或谈话过程中。例如：

“起”，when used as a complement, means “起来”。“起” in “盖起了不少新房” and “背起老大娘” has the original meaning of “起来”。“起” in “想起” is an extended usage of “起来”。It indicates that something comes up to one's mind or is brought up in the course of a conversation. E.g.

- (1) 他吃完饭，想起(来)要教阿里查字典，就马上去了。
- (2) 我们昨天谈起《小八路军》这个故事(来)，大家都觉得很有意思。
- (3) 一说起起王国福来，没有人不赞扬。

### 3. 住不得

一些动词后面带可能补语“得”或“不得”，表示能或不能，多用来说明事物的性质或状况。否定形式比肯定形式更为常见。例如：

The potential complement “得” or “不得” used after some verbs has the function of the suffix -able or -ible, usually indicating the nature of something. The negative form occurs more frequently than the positive form. E.g.

- (1) 我的自行车坏了，骑不得了。
- (2) 爸爸对海娃说：你明天一定要把信交给张连长，这件事可耽误不得！

### 4. 一夜没睡

表示时段的词语有时放在动词前作状语，说明在那段时间里发生了什么事情。例如：

When we describe what has happened during a period of time, the word or phrase denoting time is placed before the verb as an adverbial adjunct. E.g.

- (1) 他三个星期没给我来信了。
- (2) 这节课文我们两天就学完了。

比较：

Compare:

- (3) 他一下午没休息。
- (4) 他没休息一下午，只休息了两个小时。

## 练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组： Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 带领群众 带领学生 带领大家  
带领社员
2. 打击敌人 打击侵略者 受到打击  
严重打击
3. 随着情况的变化 随着水平的提高
4. 阶级兄弟 工人阶级 地主阶级  
剥削阶级
5. 病得厉害 冷得厉害 破得厉害  
急得厉害

二、完成句子： Complete the following sentences:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 消灭了侵略军。(带领)

2. 全心全意为人民服务的好同志。(赞扬)

3. 我一连看了三遍。(的确)

4. 这里的庄稼。(的确)

5. 今天我一个人留在宿舍，  
(其他)

6. 不能来上课了。(厉害)

7. 昨天他们班参观展览会，  
我们去参观了。(轮到) 我

8. 我对中文越来越有兴趣了。  
(随着)

9. 我本来要和谢利一起去看电影，  
(想起)

10. 我们昨天谈话的时候，  
起) (谈

三、用下列各组词语造句: Make sentences with the following groups of words and phrases:

1. 赞扬 毫不利己 专门利人

2. 带领 群众 生产

3. 生产队 盖 房子

4. 小老虎 驴 的确 本事 扑

四、翻译下面的一段话: Translate the following passage into English:

开始,社员劝王国福盖房子,王国福说:“住上新房,的确很舒服,但是下雨天就容易忘记阶级兄弟。”以后大家又几次劝他盖房子,他总是说:“等全村贫下中农都住上了新房,才轮到我呢。”后来,除了王国福一家以外,全村的贫下中农都住上了新房。这时,大家又去劝他,他却笑着说:“多住几年破房,一样干革命。”

STUDY RESOURCESI. Required Vocabulary.A. Familiar Characters in Known Terms:

1. 门口(儿)ménkǒu(r)                      N: gateway, doorway, in front of the door

B. New Characters and Terms:

2. 备      bèi                                      BF: prepare, provide, be ready  
(see item #20)

3. 布      bù                                      N: cloth (usually cotton), material,  
textiles (M: 块)

- a. 中国的贫下中农穿的衣服都是用布做的。

The clothes worn by the poor and lower middle peasants in China are all made of (cotton) cloth.

- b. 我用一块白布把所有的书都包起来了。

I used a piece of white cloth to wrap up all the books.

- c. 你知道为什么夏天很多人都喜欢穿布衣服吗?

Do you know why many people enjoy wearing clothes made of (cotton) cloth in the summer?

4. 盖      gài                                      V: build, construct, erect (structure,  
house, etc.); cover, cover up

- a. 我们现在住的房子是自己盖的。

The house we're living in now I built myself.

- b. 一个人从楼上跳下来,摔死了。我们立刻用布把他盖起来了。

A man jumped from upstairs and fell to his death. We immediately covered him with a piece of cloth.

- c. 我买了一块黄桌布把那张旧桌子盖上,显得好看多了。

I bought a piece of yellow tablecloth and covered up that old table. It seems much better looking.

5. 激 jī BF: excite, stir up, move emotionally  
 激动 jīdòng SV: be moved, be greatly affected;  
 be stirred up (people)

- a. 弟弟听了敌人侵略中国的罪行以后很激动。他说：“我们一定要消灭敌人。”

After little brother heard about the crimes of the enemy's invasion of China, he was quite moved. He said, "We definitely must annihilate the enemy."

- b. 一个人在树林里，因为伤了腿不能动，我急忙过去帮助他。他非常激动地说：“我很感谢你帮助我，要不然我就完了。”

There was a man in the forest who could not move because he had injured his leg. I hurriedly went over to help him. He very movingly said, "I am very grateful for your help, otherwise I would be done for."

- c. 贫农黄大叔病了，躺在床上不能起来，我给他做饭吃，他激动得哭了。

Poor peasant Uncle Huang became ill. He lay in bed unable to move. (So) I cooked food for him, (and) he was moved to tears.

6. 级 jí N/BF: step, grade, class  
 (see item #9)

7. 郊 jiāo BF: suburb  
 郊区 jiāoqū N: suburbs, suburban district

- a. 老张喜欢住在郊区的原因是城里太乱汽车太多。

The reasons why Old Zhang likes living in the suburbs are that it is too disorderly in the cities and there are too many cars.

- b. 在北京的郊区有不少大学，有两三个非常有名。

There are many colleges in Beijing's suburbs. Two or three of them are very famous.

- c. 我们的工厂在郊区，我和很多工人每天都坐工厂的汽车去工作。

Our factory is in the suburbs. Each day, many workers and I take the factory's bus to work.

8. 阶 jiē BF: grade, rank, steps, official hierarchy  
 阶级 jiējí N: (social) class, rank, steps
- a. 我以为在共产党国家里不应该有阶级。  
 I think that in a communist country there should be no class(es).
- b. 谢利的爸爸被选为工人阶级的代表。  
 Xieli's father was elected a representative of the working class.

9. 厉 lì BF: stern, grim, strict  
 厉害 lìhai SV/A: terrible, very hard, severe, stern; terribly, extremely
- a. 地上滑得厉害, 你要特别小心, 别滑倒了。  
 The floor is terribly slippery. You must be especially careful and don't slip and fall down.
- b. 贫农的生活苦得厉害。  
 The life of the poor peasant is extremely bitter.
- c. 我们生产队的队长对我们非常厉害, 我们都怕他。  
 Our production team leader is extraordinarily stern toward us, and we are all afraid of him.

10. 轮 lún BF/V: wheel; take turns, to be someone's turn (to do something), rotate

轮到 X lúndào X

Patt: to be X's turn

- a. 今天轮到我关教室的门和窗户。  
 Today it's my turn to shut the door and the windows in the classroom.
- b. 这次开会李同志当主席, 下次就轮到我了。  
 In this meeting Comrade Li will be the chairman. Next time it will be my turn.
- c. 请王大夫看病的人太多了, 今天轮到轮不到我呢?  
 There are too many people waiting to be treated by Doctor Wang. Will my turn come up today?

11. 排 pái V/BF: reject, expel, dispose

排水 páishuǐ V: drain (water)

- a. 一连下了三天大雨, 沟里的水多得快要满出来了, 我们快排水吧。

Heavy rain fell continuously for three days. There is so much water in the ditches it will soon overflow. Let's hurry up and drain them.

- b. 大家冒着大雨排水, 衣服都湿透了。

Everybody is braving the heavy rainfall to drain the water. (Their) clothes are wet all the way through.

- c. 这座楼太旧了, 排水有困难, 应该早点儿修理。

This building is too old and there is difficulty draining it. It should be repaired without delay (lit. a little early).

12. 破 pò

SV: broken, worn, torn; tumble-down, dilapidated, run-down, ramshackle

破坏 pòhuài

V/N: destroy, ruin, undermine, sabotage; destruction

- a. 这间屋子又旧又破, 你怎么能住呢?

This room is both old and run-down. How can you live in it?

- b. 我的大衣破了, 母亲找了一块布给我补上了。

My overcoat is worn. Mother found a piece of cloth and patched it up for me.

- c. 昨天夜里有人把我们工厂的机器破坏了。

Last night someone destroyed the machinery in our factory.

- d. 敌人的破坏活动让我们非常愤怒。

The enemy's sabotage activity made us extraordinarily angry.

13. 其 qí

BF: he, she, they, it, their, this, that (demonstrative and possessive pronoun)

其他 qítā

N: other, the others, the rest

- a. 除了这本字典以外, 其他的书都是从图书馆借来的。

Aside from this dictionary, all other books were borrowed from the library.

- b. 北京和中国其他各大城市我都去过。

I have been to Beijing and every other large city in China.

- c. 这个屋子里的人, 我只认识老张, 其他的我都没见过。

Among the people in this room I recognize only Old Zhang. I have never seen the others before.

14. 舒 shū BF: relaxed, comfortable  
舒服 shūfu SV: comfortable

- a. 大汽车比小汽车舒服得多。

A large car is more comfortable than a small one.

- b. 我参观了一些贫下中农住的地方, 他们生活真苦, 我心里觉得很不舒服。

I visited some places where the poor and lower middle peasants live. Their life is really hard. I felt very uncomfortable.

- c. 一连五天我都只睡了四小时, 今天是星期六, 我要舒舒服服的睡一天。

For five consecutive days, I only slept four hours each day. Today is Saturday and I'm going to sleep comfortably for the whole day.

15. 随 suí V: follow, accompany  
随着 suízhe CV: following, accompanying  
(see CR L.5, note #1)

- a. 随着生产的发展, 我也学到了不少生产知识。

With the development of production, I also learned a great deal of knowledge about production.

- b. 随着思想感情的变化, 我这个城市姑娘越来越喜欢集体活动了。

Following the changes in (my) thoughts and feelings, I, a city girl, liked the collective('s) activities more and more.

- c. 随着抗日军队, 我们一直到了中国西南部。

Accompanying the "Resist-Japan" troops, we went straight to Southwest China.

16. 碎 suì SV: broken, smashed, torn, broken to pieces, shattered

- a. 你知道什么东西摔得碎, 什么东西摔不碎?

Do you know which things are breakable and which aren't? (lit. which will break into pieces when dropped)

b. 什么事情让你心碎?

What is breaking your heart?

c. 昨天夜里有人把友谊商店的窗户砸碎了, 拿走了不少东西。

Last night someone smashed the window(s) of the "You-Yi" store. Many things were taken away.

17. 疼 téng

V/SV: love dearly, fond of (children); painful, sore  
(love and pain are often felt to be indistinguishable in Chinese)

心疼 xīnténg

V/A/SV: love (more colloquial than "爱"), have affection for; affectionately; painful, distressing

a. 爸爸妈妈都很心疼他们的孩子。

Fathers and mothers all have affection for their children.

b. 妹妹忙得连饭也没吃, 母亲很心疼地说: "休息一下, 吃点东西吧!"

Sister was so busy that she did not even eat. Mother affectionately said, "Rest a bit, and have a bite to eat."

c. 有的人把有用的东西扔了, 我觉得很心疼。

Some people throw away useful things. I feel this is very distressing.

18. 兄 xiōng

N/BF: elder brother (used to address friends, irrespective of age)

兄弟 xiōngdì

N: brother

a. 张连长对战士们好象自己的兄弟一样。

Company commander Zhang treats his soldiers like they were his own brothers.

b. 阶级兄弟总是应该互相帮助。

Class brothers should always help each other.

19. 扬 yáng

BF: praise, acclaim, make known

赞扬 zànyáng

V/N: praise, exalt, speak favorably of; praise

a. 白求恩大夫用自己的血救活了中国战士, 受到了中国人民的赞扬。

Dr. Bethune used his own blood to save Chinese soldiers. He received the praise of the Chinese people (for this).



- b. 世界上有许多人都赞扬毛主席是一个伟大的人。

There are many people in the world who praise Chairman Mao for being a great man.

- c. 我们都应该赞扬全心全意为人民服务的好同志。

We all should praise good comrades who wholeheartedly serve the people.

20. 准 zhǔn

BF: regulate, exact, definite

准备 zhǔnbèi

V/N: prepare, get ready; preparations

- a. 我把明天要用的东西都准备好了。

I have prepared the things to be used tomorrow.

- b. 我们正准备到车站去接朋友, 忽然下起雨来了。

We were just getting ready to go to the station to meet a friend when suddenly it started to rain.

- c. 上星期五晚上, 老师请我们吃饭, 她准备了很多菜, 都不错。

Last Friday night (our) teacher invited us to dinner. She prepared many dishes. All of them were good.

C. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

21. 背 bēi

bēi

V: carry on one's back

- a. 爬山的时候, 一定要背着用的和吃的东西, 不能拿着。

When mountain climbing, one definitely should carry utensils and foodstuff on one's back. They can't be hand carried.

- b. 车站的工人把粮食一包一包的背到火车上, 运到别的城市去。

Bag by bag, laborers on the station platform were carrying foodstuff on their backs aboard the train to be shipped to other cities.

- c. 一位同志发现路上有一个病人, 他背起那个病人就走, 把他送到医院去了。

A comrade discovered a sick man on the road. He carried the sick man on his back and left. He delivered him to the hospital.

22. 被迫 bèipò V: be forced to, be compelled to
- a. 解放后, 很多住在城市里的人被迫到农村去作很苦的工作。  
After Liberation, many people living in the cities were compelled to move to rural communities to perform hard labor.
- b. 我是被迫参加共产党的, 不是我要参加的。  
I was forced to join the communist party. It's not that I wanted to join.
- c. 因为听说侵略军要到各家来搜八路军, 我就被迫离开家了。  
Because I heard that the invading army was coming to every home to search for the Eighth Route Army soldiers, I was compelled to leave home.

23. 操心 cāoxīn SV/VO: take pains (with/over something), go to great pains (for something/someone), be anxious, be concerned
- ("心都操碎了" is an intensive way of saying "操心," similar to the vernacular "really knocked himself out")
- a. 爸爸妈妈总是为孩子操心, 希望他们作一个有用的人为国家服务。  
Parents are always concerned about their children. They hope that their children will become useful persons and serve their country.
- b. 我儿子已经大学毕业了, 可是还不会照顾自己真让我操心。  
My son has already graduated from college, but he still can't take care of himself. This really worries me.
- c. 我不喜欢为一些小事情操心。  
I do not like to worry over small matters.

24. 查看 chákàn V: inspect, examine, investigate, look into (a matter)
- a. 生产队队长明天要到水库来查看。  
The production team leader is going to inspect the water reservoir tomorrow.
- b. 我们工厂的领导干部经常到车间来查看机器。  
The leading cadre of our factory often come to the workshops to inspect the machinery.

- c. 新区长非常关心贫下中农的生活, 今天要到各家去查看。

The new district chief is extremely concerned with the livelihood of the poor and lower middle peasants. He is going to inspect every home today.

25. 打击 dǎjī

V/N: deal a blow to, strike; a blow

- a. 因为小钢被鬼子杀死了, 这个打击使小钢的母亲在感情上起了很大的变化。

Little Gang was killed by the devils. This blow caused a great change in the feelings of Little Gang's mother.

- b. 王国福和其他干部一次又一次的打击了敌人的破坏活动。

Wang Guofu and other cadre have repeatedly dealt blows to the enemy's destructive activities.

- c. 他对朋友很热情, 对工作很认真, 为什么还常受打击呢?

He is very cordial to his friends and conscientious in his work. Why does he often still suffer blows (from people)?

26. 带领 dàilǐng

V: lead (troops, army, party, masses, etc.)

- a. 李老师带领他的学生到农村去帮助农民种菜。

Teacher Li led his students into rural communities to help the peasants plant vegetables.

- b. 王同志带领群众去排水。

Comrade Wang led the masses out to drain the water.

- c. 我们的班长带领我们去破坏敌人的据点。

Our squad leader led us to destroy the enemy's fortified point.

27. 道路 dàolù

N: road, path, way, route

- a. 城市的道路比农村里的好得多。

City roads are much better than farm village roads.

- b. 中国解放以后还有人走帝国主义道路吗?

After the Liberation of China, are there still people who walk the road of imperialism?

- c. 等这条道路修建好了以后就方便多了。

After this road is built, it will be much more convenient.

28. 的确 dīquè

A: truly, really, certainly

- a. 这节课课文的确难,我一连念了十遍才会背。

The text for this lesson is truly difficult. I read it ten times in a row before I could recite it.

- b. 飞机比船的确快得多。

Airplanes are certainly much faster than ships.

- c. 很多美国学生说中文说得的确流利,跟中国人一样。

Many American students speak really fluent Chinese, the same as the Chinese (people).

29. 地主 dìzhǔ

N: landlord

- a. 他有很多土地,他是个大地主。

He has a lot of land, He is a big landlord.

- b. 解放前的地主,在解放后跟贫下中农一样了,没有土地了。

The pre-liberation landlord, after Liberation, was like the poor and lower middle peasant, and had no land.

- c. 解放后,地主的孩子们都不许上大学。

After Liberation, children of the landlords were not allowed to attend university.

30. 发动 fādòng

V: mobilize, launch, start (a movement, campaign, engine)

- a. 随着生产的不断发展,王国福发动社员互相帮助,修建了不少新道路。

Accompanying the incessant development of production, Wang Guofu mobilized the commune members into mutual assistance. They built many new roads.

- b. 生产队队长发动大家在这条新修建的道路两边种树。

The production team leader mobilized the people in planting trees on both sides of the newly built road.

- c. 解放以前有人发动反对地主压迫劳动人民。

Prior to Liberation, some people mobilized (the people) to oppose the landlords who were oppressing the working people.

31. 翻身 fānshēn

VO: be emancipated (a term with sociopolitical connotations for the communists. Term originally meant "rise from poverty to affluence," "turn on one's side")

- a. 解放以前劳动人民受压迫总是没有翻身的机会。

Prior to Liberation, the working people were oppressed and never had the opportunity of becoming emancipated.

- b. 解放以后劳动人民翻了身做了国家的主人。

After Liberation, the working people were emancipated and became the masters of the nation.

- c. 一位战士伤得很厉害, 躺在床上, 自己不能翻身, 必须有人推他才可以。

A soldier was severely injured and lay in a bed. He could not turn over by himself and needed someone to push him before he could.

32. 该 gāi

V: should, ought to (contr. of "应该"); it is time (for something to happen, or to do something)

该又 gāi X

V: it is X's turn

- a. 时候到了, 你该去上课了。

The time has come, you should go to class.

- b. 你的大衣又旧又破, 该买一件新的了。

Your overcoat is both old and worn. You should buy a new one.

- c. 阶级兄弟都住上了新房(子), 最后该轮到王国福了。

The class brothers are now all living in new housing. Finally, it is Wang Guofu's turn.

33. 坚决 jiānjué

SV/A: resolute, firm, determined; resolutely, firmly, determinedly

- a. 王国福坚决走社会主义道路, 自力更生, 领导群众发展生产。

Wang Guofu is resolutely walking the path of socialism, relying on his own efforts, and leading the masses in developing production.

- b. 我要出院, 因为住在医院里很不舒服, 大夫坚决地说: “你的病还很厉害, 不能出院。”

I wanted to leave the hospital because it was very uncomfortable staying in the hospital. The doctor said resolutely, "Your illness is still severe. You can't leave."

- c. 他虽然已经七十多岁了, 但是坚决要继续为人民服务。

Although he is already over 70 years old, yet he is determined to continue serving the people.

34. 叫门 jiàomén VO: knock at the door

- a. 我听见有人叫门的时候, 先看看是谁然后再开门。

When I hear someone knocking at the door, (I) first see who it is and then open the door.

- b. 昨晚我回家太晚了, 叫了半天门我爱人才来开门。

Last evening I returned home too late. (I) knocked at the door a long time before my spouse came to open the door.

35. 口 kǒu M: persons (lit. mouths)

- a. 你家一共有几口人?

How many persons are there in your family?

- b. 我家有三口人, 我爸爸我妈妈和我。

There are three persons in my family: my dad, my mom, and I.

- c. 贫农老黄一家六口人住在一间又破又小的房子里。

Poor peasant Old Huang, with six persons in the family, lives in a small and dilapidated house.

36. 娘 niáng N: mother

大娘 dàniáng N: "Ma'am," "Mrs. ..." (polite form of address for an elderly lady)

老大娘 lǎodàniáng N: old lady, "granny"

- a. 一个六十多岁的老大娘, 以前家里有五口人, 现在就剩下她一个人了。

(There is) an old granny more than 60 years old who used to have five persons in her family. Now there is only she left.

- b. 我们邻居的老大娘常给我们补衣服。

Our neighboring granny often patches our clothes for us.

- c. 有一天我听见一个人叫老大娘的门，  
原来是她的儿子回来了。

One day I heard someone knocking on the old granny's door.  
It turns out that her son had returned.

37. 忘记 wàngji

V: forget

- a. 他高兴得连自己的名字都忘记了。

He was so happy that he even forgot his own name.

- b. 我怕忘记了，所以把重要的事都写  
在一个小本子上。

I'm afraid of forgetting, so I write everything important in  
a little notebook.

- c. 我们虽然住上了新房可是不要忘记  
那些还住在破房里的阶级兄弟。

Although we are now living in a new house, yet we must not  
forget our class brothers who are still living in dilapidated  
housing.

II. Additional Vocabulary

1. 长工      chánggōng      N: hired farm hand, farm hand, hired hand
- a. 长工没有土地,总是给地主工作。  
Hired hands do not have any land. They always work for the landlords.
- b. 王国福在解放以前当长工,解放以后翻了身。  
Prior to Liberation, Wang Guofu was a hired hand. After Liberation he was emancipated.
2. 泪      lèi      BF: a tear, tears  
眼泪      yǎnlèi      N: tears
- a. 小弟弟哭了半天,可是没什么眼泪。  
Little brother cried for a long time, but there weren't any tears.
- b. 老大娘的房子烧起来了。她吓得不能动。王国福看见了,背起老大娘就走。老大娘激动得流下了眼泪。  
Old granny's house started burning. She was so scared that she couldn't move. When Wang Guofu saw this, he carried her on his back and took her away. Granny was so moved that tears flowed.
3. 漏      lòu      V: leak
- a. 我们住的房子是半年以前才盖好的。怎么现在就漏雨了呢?  
This house we live in was built only half a year ago. How come it is now leaking (rain)?
- b. 贫农老大娘住的房子,又旧又破,并且漏雨漏得很厉害。  
The poor peasant granny's house is both old and run-down. Moreover it leaks rain terribly.
4. 料      liào      BF: material, raw material (See item #6)
5. 披      pī      V: throw on (a garment), throw on (one's shoulders)
- a. 有的人不喜欢把大衣穿好了,就喜欢披着。  
Some people do not like to wear their overcoats properly. They only like to throw them on (over their shoulders.)
- b. “把大衣穿好了,不要披着。”  
“Wear your overcoat properly. Don't throw it over your shoulders.”



6. 塑 .sù BF: mold; plastics  
 塑料 sùliào N: plastic, Bakelite  
 塑料布 sùliàobù N: plastic cloth

a. 最近几十年,塑料工业发展得非常快。

In recent decades the plastics industry has developed very rapidly.

b. 塑料的用处很多。小孩子玩的东西,家里,办公室里,医院里用的东西很多都是用塑料做的。

Plastics have many uses. Many children's toys, and articles used in homes, offices and hospitals are all made of plastic.

Proper Names:

7. 王国福 Wáng Guófú N: (personal name)

PRACTICE EXERCISESI. Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passages and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

Paragraph 1:

抗日战争初期,日本侵略军占领了中国很多的地方.后来他们继续发动了很多次包围战,每次日本侵略军发动包围战的时候,都有很多工人和农民被迫躲到郊区或是别的村子去.

Paragraph 2:

那个时候我随着几个给地主当长工的阶级兄弟都很坚决地当了游击队的战士了.我们不但破坏了敌人许多的道路,也常常烧了敌人藏的粮食,所以给了敌人很大的打击.我们的勇敢常常得到带领我们的队长的赞扬.

Paragraph 3:

我有一个朋友他住的房子破得很厉害，又漏雨。我想他帮忙盖房子，因为我帮他一个屋顶。他想常了，一个新屋的时候，他告诉我：“我的事不要你操心！”

Paragraph 4:

我在看为候块走了一了了？她进话。我查因时一雨了开么她请的。一次坏了。这把着见门怎了急她。有坏么下只好冒看是我诉着了。了，然什停法，背上才可问告别听。一年忽为没办的后来叫儿情说：“我来了。哪汽车，他们没在少准备在热帮流。是车，不知道，我披多准站坏很人都。忘记汽不少，雨布有正娘车就找泪。我忘开也很大的道我大我后去眼。山路上天车着做知子老把我得。路上车下料不房子一位就等。路上下塑了个一我听了来，激动。

Paragraph 1:

1. During what stages of the War of Resistance against Japan did the Japanese invaders occupy many parts of China?
  
2. Later on, what did the Japanese launch many times?
  
3. What happened every time they did this?

Paragraph 2:

4. What did I join? With whom did I join?
  
5. What mission(s) did we accomplish?
  
6. Who often praised our bravery?

Paragraph 3:

7. What were the conditions of my friends house?
  
8. What did I decide to do?

9. Did my friend accept the help I offered? What did he say to me?  
How did he say it?

Paragraph 4:

10. After my car broke down, what did I do first?
11. How many cars were there on the road? Who stopped?
12. How was the weather on the road? What did I finally do?
13. When did the door open?
14. What was the first thing the granny said to me?
15. After that, what did she say?
16. How was I affected by her kindness?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.

Answer Key:

Score

- |  |    |
|--|----|
| 1. at the <u>initial stage</u><br>1  | 1  |
| 2. <u>encirclements</u><br>1   | 1  |
| 3. many <u>workers</u> and <u>farmers</u> were <u>forced</u> to <u>hide</u> themselves in the<br>1                  1                  2                  1<br><u>suburbs</u> or <u>villages</u><br>2                                    1   | 8  |
| 4. I joined the <u>guerrillas</u> with several <u>hired farm hand class brothers</u> .<br>1  2                  2                  2   | 7  |
| 5. We not only <u>destroyed</u> many of the <u>enemy's roads</u> , we also <u>burned</u> the<br>2                                    1                  2                                    2<br><u>enemy's hidden grain(s)</u> .<br>1                  1   | 9  |
| 6. From the <u>unit leader(s) who led us</u><br>1                                    2   | 3  |
| 7. Both <u>terribly dilapidated</u> and also <u>leaked rain</u><br>2                  2                                    2   | 6  |
| 8. I decided to <u>help him repair</u> (his home) and to <u>build a new roof</u><br>1                  1                                    2                  1   | 5  |
| 9. No; I <u>shouldn't be concerned</u> with his affairs; he was <u>stirred up</u><br>1                                    2                                    2   | 5  |
| 10. I <u>inspected</u> the car for a long time<br>2  | 2  |
| 11. <u>Very few cars</u> . <u>Nobody</u> stopped<br>1                                    1   | 2  |
| 12. It <u>rained heavily</u> . The only thing I could do was to <u>throw a cloth</u><br>1  2                  1<br>made of <u>plastic on my back</u> , <u>braved the rain</u> and <u>walked</u> for I don't<br>2                  2                  2                  1<br>know <u>how many miles</u> .<br>1 | 12 |
| 13. When I was <u>getting ready</u> to <u>knock on the door</u><br>2                                    2  | 4  |
| 14. She asked, " <u>What happened?</u> "<br>1  | 1  |
| 15. She said, " <u>Don't worry</u> , please come in. Wait and I'll <u>find</u><br>1                                    1<br><u>someone to help you.</u> "<br>1   | 3  |
| 16. I <u>was so moved</u> that <u>tears flowed</u><br>2                                    2   | 4  |

Total: 73

Passing: 52

II. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

1. 从前老王被迫当过长工。抗日战争的时候，他发动了几十个长工一起去参加游击队，后来他还当了游击队队长。他带领游击队到处破坏日本侵略军占领的地区，烧日本侵略军的房子。他们还到处发动农民打击地主阶级的破坏活动。现在老王是我们公社的干部。他

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

正带领社会主义  
 决走社主  
 道路。

2. 暴风雨的时候，  
 我家附近有一  
 个老大娘摔倒  
 了，伤得很厉害，  
 躺在路上不能  
 动。我马上披上  
 一块塑料布跑  
 出去，把她背起  
 来，背到我家里。  
 后来老大娘知  
 道是我把她背  
 到我家来的，她  
 非常感谢我，她  
 激动得眼泪也  
 流下来了。我对  
 老大娘说：“大  
 爷们是阶级兄  
 弟，这是我该  
 做的事。”





漏得很厉害。工  
人们都心疼地  
劝他搬到工厂  
新盖的房子去  
住。可是他说：“我  
在这小房子里  
住得的确很舒  
服，该搬进新房  
子的人多得很，  
还轮不到我呢！”

5. 北京郊区的贫  
下的中农原来住  
的，都是房子。解  
放后，随着生产发  
展，公社的干部发  
动烧砖，盖新房。  
将来在北京的郊  
区，

5.

就可以看到新房子里。  
 到处都是新房子。

6. 我们的生产队  
 我常常夜里一查  
 个人到地里查地  
 看。昨晚他冒雨查地  
 大雨到地里有些地  
 看，发现都有满了。应  
 里水都满了。应  
 该立刻排水，可  
 是雨这么大，又  
 是晚上，找谁来  
 排水呢？他只好  
 自己动手，结果才  
 一直到天亮才赞  
 回家，社员们好队  
 扬他是个好队长，  
 大家都说他  
 为集体操心，把  
 心都操碎了。

7.

昨天,郊区东方的  
红人民公社的  
王同志来学校  
给我们讲话.他  
说今天我们翻  
身了,可是我们  
不能忘记,其他  
国家还有许多  
跟我们一样的  
阶级兄弟,他们  
还没有翻身.王  
同志讲到自己的  
过去当长工的  
历史的时候,许  
多同学都激动  
得流下了眼泪.

7.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.

KEY - Model Translations:Paragraph 1:

Formerly, / Old Wang / had been forced / to serve as / a hired hand. /  
 1 1 2 2 2  
At the time of / the anti-Japanese war / he mobilized /  
 1 1 2  
scores (several tens) of / hired hands / to go together / and join /  
 1 2 1 1  
the guerrillas, / and later, / he even served as / a guerrilla unit /  
 1 1 2 1  
leader. / He led / the guerrillas / everywhere / to destroy / the areas /  
 1 2 1 2 2 1  
occupied / by the Japanese invasion forces / and burned / the houses /  
 1 1 2 1  
of the Japanese invasion forces. / They also / mobilized / the peasants /  
 1 1 2 1  
everywhere / to strike blows against / the destructive / activities /  
 2 2 2 1  
of the landlord / class. / Now, / Old Wang / is a cadre / of our commune. /  
 2 2 1 1 1 1  
Just now / he is leading / the commune members / in resolutely / walking /  
 1 2 1 2 1  
the road / of socialism. / (49/67)  
 2 2

Paragraph 2:

During / a storm, / a granny / fell down / in the vicinity /  
 1 2 2 1 1  
of my home / and was severely / injured / and lay / on the road / unable /  
 1 2 1 1 1 1  
to move. / At once I / threw on / a plastic cloth / and ran out, /  
 1 1 2 2 1  
picked her up (on my back) / and carried her (on my back) / to my house. /  
 2 2 1  
Later, / when granny knew / that it was I / who carried her (on my back) /  
 1 2 1 2  
to my home, / she was extraordinarily / grateful to me. / She was so moved /  
 1 2 2 2  
that tears / even flowed. / I said / to granny, / "Ma'am, / we are /  
 2 1 1 2 2 1  
class / brothers. / This was (only) / something / I should do." / (40/56)  
 2 2 1 1 2

Paragraph 3:

In the past / many / peasants / in the Chinese / rural communities /  
were forced / to serve as / hired hands / in the homes / of the landlords. /  
Under / the oppression / and exploitation / of the landlord / class, /  
the life / of the hired hands / was extremely / bitter. / Every day /  
they had to labor / 14 or 15 / hours, / but / still (had/received) /  
no food / and no clothing. / In 1949 / China / was liberated /  
and the hired hands / were all / emancipated. / Some / hired hands /  
joined / the Chinese Communist Party / and some / hired hands /  
became / cadre. / (39/55)

Paragraph 4:

Comrade Zhang / is the head / of our factory. / He and his family /  
of six persons / live in / a very dilapidated / and very old /  
small house. / Even more, / the house / often / leaks rain /  
quite terribly. / All / the workers / affectionately / advised him /  
to move / to a house / newly / built / by the factory / to live, /  
but he said, / "I / am living / truly / quite comfortably /  
in this little house. / There are many / who should / move into /  
the new houses. / It isn't my turn / yet." / (33/46)

Paragraph 5:

All the houses where / the poor and lower / middle peasants /  
in the Beijing / suburbs / formerly / lived / were both run-down /  
and old. / After / Liberation, / production / was developed. /  
Accompanying / the incessant / development / of production, / the commune /

cadres / mobilized / the commune members / to plant trees /  
 1 2 1 1  
and bake bricks / to prepare / for building / new houses. / in the future. /  
 2 2 2 1 2  
Now, / if / you go to / the suburbs / of Beijing, / you can / see /  
 1 1 1 2 1 1 1  
new houses / everywhere. / (33/46)  
 1 2

Paragraph 6:

Our / production team leader / frequently / goes alone / at night /  
 1 1 1 1 1  
to inspect / the fields. / Last night / he braved / heavy rain /  
 2 1 1 1 1  
to go to the fields / and inspect, / and discovered / some fields /  
 1 1 1 1  
were full of water / and should be / immediately / drained. / But /  
 1 2 1 2 1  
the rain / was so heavy / and it was also / at night, / who /  
 1 1 1 1 1  
could be found / to come / and drain them? / The only thing he could do /  
 1 1 2 1  
was start work / by himself. / As a result, / he didn't return home /  
 2 1 1 1  
until dawn. / The commune members / praised him / as a good team leader, /  
 1 1 2 1  
and everybody / said / he went to great pains / for the collective, /  
 1 1 2 1  
that he really knocked himself out. / (35/49)  
 2

Paragraph 7:

Yesterday, / Comrade Wang / of the "Dong Fang Hong" / People's Commune /  
 1 1 2 2  
came to / our school / to give us / a talk. / He said / that today /  
 1 1 1 1 1 1  
we are emancipated, / but / we can't / forget / that there are still /  
 2 1 1 2 1  
many / class / brothers / like us / in other / countries / who haven't yet /  
 1 2 2 1 2 1 1  
been emancipated. / When / Comrade Wang / spoke about /  
 2 1 1 1  
his own past history / as a hired hand, / many classmates / were moved /  
 1 2 1 2  
to shed tears. / (30/42)  
 2

## 第六课 东郭先生和狼

东郭先生赶着驴沿着大路往前走，驴背上驮着一个口袋，口袋里装着书。

忽然从后面跑来一只狼，慌慌张张地对东郭先生说：“仁慈的先生，救救我吧！打猎的在后边追我，要把我打死。让我在你的口袋里躲一躲吧！躲过了这场灾难，我永远也忘不了你的好处。”



东郭先生犹豫了一会儿，看着狼那种可怜的样子，就说：“好吧！我救救你。”他把口袋

打开，拿出里面的书，想把狼装进去。他怕狼在里面不舒服，这样装，那样装，总是装不好。

打猎的越来越近，都能听见马跑的声音了。狼着急地说：“先生，能不能快一点？象你这样慢，哪儿是救我，简直是让他们来捉我了。”说着就躺在地上，四条腿并在一起，让东郭先生用绳子捆起来。东郭先生按照它的意思，把它捆好装进口袋里，上面又加了一些书，放到驴背上，继续往前走。

打猎的追上来一看，狼不见了，就问东郭先生：“有一只狼跑过来了，你看见没有？”东郭先生回答说：“我没有看见。这儿有很多小路，也许从小路逃走了。”打猎的听了，就沿着小路赶下去。

狼在口袋里听见马跑的声音渐渐地远了，就喊：“先生，可以放我出去了。”东郭先生把它放出来，狼前后看了看，说：“我现在饿极了，如果找不到东西吃，一定要饿死。先生既然救我，就该救到底，让我吃了你吧！”说着，就向东郭先生扑去。



东郭先生非常害怕，六对犄角米狼狂。狼扑到驴这边，他就躲到那边。嘴里不住地骂：“你这没良心的东西！你这没良心的东西！”



正在这时，前边来了一位老人。东郭先生急忙把老人拉住，请他评理。他把事情的经过告诉了老人。狼插进来说：“他刚才捆住我的腿，把我装在口袋里，上面还压了很多书，哪儿是救我，明明是想闷死我。这样的人还不该吃吗？”

东郭先生很生气，对老人说，他救那只狼，只是因为可怜它，并没有别的意思。

老人想了想说：“你们的话我都不信。这个口袋怎么能装下一只狼？我得看一看狼是

怎样装进去的。”狼问急了，它又躺下，四条腿并在一起，让东郭先生用绳子捆起来。东郭先生把它捆好装进口袋里。这时候老人对东郭先生说：“现在你安全了。以后要记住，对这样的坏东西仁慈，就会害了自己。”

说完，老人和东郭先生一起把狼打死了。

### 生词 New words

- |        |                |  |
|--------|----------------|--|
| 1. 先生  | (名) xiānshēng  | mister, gentleman, sir                 |
| 2. 狼   | (名) láng [只]   | wolf                                   |
| 3. 沿   | (动) yán        | along                                  |
| 4. 背   | (名) bèi        | back                                   |
| 5. 驮   | (动) tuó        | to carry (on the back of a horse etc.) |
| 6. 口袋  | (名) kǒudài     | sack, bag                              |
| 7. 慌张  | (形) huāngzhāng | flurried, nervous                      |
| 8. 仁慈  | (形) réncí      | kind, merciful                         |
| 9. 打猎  | 打猎             | to hunt (“打猎的” means hunter)           |
| 10. 灾难 | (名) zāinàn [场] | disaster, calamity                     |
| 11. 好处 | (名) hǎochù     | benevolence                            |
| 12. 打开 | 打开             | to open                                |

13. 犹豫 (动) yóuyù to hesitate
14. 可怜 (形、动) kělián pitiful, to pity
15. 马 (名) mǎ [匹 pǐ] horse
16. 近 (形) jìn near
17. 捉 (动) zhuō to seize, to capture
18. 并 (动) bìng to put together
19. 绳子 (名) shéngzi [条, 根 gēn] rope
20. 捆 (动) kǔn to tie
21. 按照 (介) ànzhào according to
22. 上面 (名) shàngmiàn on top of, over, above
23. 饿 (动) è hungry
24. 既然...就... jìrán...jiù... since..., such being the case...
25. ...到底 ...dào dǐ to the end, thoroughly
26. 只好 (副) zhǐhǎo to have to, can only
27. 借 (动) jiè to rely on, to avail one-self of
28. 抵挡 (动) dǐdǎng to resist, to parry
29. 不住 bú zhù incessantly, ceaselessly
30. 良心 (名) liángxīn conscience
31. 评理 píng lǐ to judge
32. 经过 (名) jīngguò what has happened, ins and outs
33. 插 (动) chā to cut in, to interrupt
34. 压 (动) yā to press, to lay (something heavy) on
35. 明明 míngmíng quite clear
36. 闷 (动) mēn to stifle
37. 生气 shēng qì angry
38. 并没有 (没有) (副) bìng (méiyǒu) by no means, in no sense
39. 意思 (名) yìsi intention
40. 信 (动) xìn to believe
41. 得 (助动、动) děi must, to have to, to need
42. 安全 (形) ānquán safe, security
43. 害 (动) hài to cause harm to, to injure

专名 Proper name

东郭先生 Dōngguō Mìster Tungkuo  
xiānshēng

词语例解 Notes

1. 都能听见马跑的声音了  
“都”有时候有“已经”的意思，往往带有紧迫的口气。这里的“都”必须读轻声。例如：

“都” sometimes means “已经”, often implying a sense of urgency. In such cases, “都” must be pronounced in the neutral tone. E.g.

- (1) 时间过得真快, 都到十二月了。
- (2) 天都亮了, 快起来吧!
- (3) 都要上课了, 咱们快点走吧!

2. 哪儿是教我

“哪儿”有时构成反问句。例如:

“哪儿” is often used to form rhetorical questions. E.g.

- (1) 他哪儿知道! (他不知道。)
- (2) 他哪儿会不知道! (他一定知道。)

3. 按照

“按照”有时候可以说“按”或“照”。例如:

“按照” sometimes can be simplified into “按” or “照”. E.g.

- (1) 东郭先生(按)照老人想出的办法把狼打死了。

- (2) 这件事应该按(照)大家的意见去作。

4. 追上来

这里的复合趋向补语“上来”, 表示动作向说话人或所谈事物移动的方向。例如:

Here the compound directional complement “上来” indicates the direction of movement towards the speaker or the person or thing concerned. E.g.

- (1) 打猎的从后面追上来了。
- (2) 我从医院回来以后, 大家都围上来, 问我老师是不是快出院了。

5. 理下去

“下去”有一个引申用法, 表示动作的继续。例如:

“下去” has an extended usage to show that an action is in progress. E.g.

- (1) 信还没写完, 晚上还要写下去。
- (2) 那本书我只看了一半, 以后一直没有看下去。

6. 既然...就...

- (1) 既然大家都想听那部交响乐, 今天晚上就听吧。

- (2) 你既然知道那个故事, 就给大家讲讲吧。

后面如果是反问语气, 一般不用“就”。例如:

If “既然” is followed by a rhetorical question, “就” is generally not used. E.g.

- (3) 既然他已经知道了这件事, 为什么要问呢?

7. 只好

用“只好”的句子表示虽然不愿意这样做, 但是由于某种原因不得不这样。例如:

“只好” shows that for some reason one has to put up with something. E.g.

- (1) 小红病了, 不能出去玩儿, 只好躺在床上看画报。

(2) 上课的时候,我的钢笔坏了,只好用铅笔。

8. 明明

“明明”常用来肯定一种情况,同时表示对与之矛盾的情况不理解、不满意或怀疑。例如:

“明明” is often used to stress belief in one's own judgement and to imply incomprehension, dissatisfaction or doubt on the part of the speaker when something apparently contradictory to his ideas happens. E.g.

- (1) 刚才我明明看见他在屋里,现在怎么又不见了?  
(2) 他明明知道这件事,却故意说不知道。

9. 并没有

“并”用在“不”或“没有”等否定词前,加强否定的语气,说明事实和所想的不一樣,有时有辩驳的意味。例如:

“并” placed before a negative word intensifies the negation, implying that something has turned out contrary to one's expectations. Sometimes it has a deprecatory tone. E.g.

- (1) 昨天下了一夜雪,可是今天并不太冷。  
(2) 王国福帮助大家盖房子,可是并没有想过要给自己盖。

10. 得(děi)

“得”用于口语。作助动词时,表示意志或事实上的必要。否定式是“不用”,不说“不得”。例如:

“得” is very often used in colloquial speech. As an auxiliary verb, it indicates necessity. The negative form is “不用”, not “不得”. E.g.

(1) 这个字怎么念我记不清楚了,得查查字典。

(2) 你如果很忙,今天的会就不用去参加

了。  
作动词时,有“需要”的意思。否定式是“不用”或“用不了”。例如:  
As a verb, “得” means to need and the negative form is “不用” or “用不了”. E.g.

- (3) 买这张世界地图得多少钱?  
(4) 这件事大家都很清楚,不用我再讲了。  
(5) 修那台机器用不了五个人,三个人就够

练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组: Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 一场大雪 一场大雨 一场电影  
一场灾难  
2. 打开书 打开门 打开收音机  
打开窗户  
3. 说下去 念下去 做下去 讨论下去  
坚持下去  
4. 打到底 斗争到底 进行到底  
革命到底

二、完成句子: Complete the following sentences:

1. \_\_\_\_\_就是书店。(沿着)
2. \_\_\_\_\_,把机器修好了。(按照)
3. 我的自行车坏了,\_\_\_\_\_。(只好)
4. 我去看朋友,他不在家,\_\_\_\_\_。(只好)
5. 她一边追牛,\_\_\_\_\_。(不住)
6. 他一连推了几十车砖,脸上\_\_\_\_\_,衣服也全湿透了。(不住)
7. 鬼子在海娃身上搜了半天,但是\_\_\_\_\_。(并没有)

三、把下列句子译成中文,用上括号里的词语: Translate the following sentences into Chinese, using the words and phrases in the brackets:

1. Haiwa said: "I'm already fourteen and please let me join the Eighth Route Army." (都)
2. The work was finished and a lot of people came up to shake hands with Lei Feng. (上来)
3. The calf got frightened and ran like mad, and at once she started running after it. (下去)
4. Since you have finished reading this book, please tell us what it is about. (既然...就...)
5. Though I have stayed there for a few months, I am not very familiar with the conditions there (as you might expect). (并不)

四、造句: Make sentences with:

1. 按照
2. 明明
3. 只好
4. 象
5. 不住
6. 既然...就...

五、朗读下面的小剧本: Read aloud the following playlet:

[东郭先生赶着驴在路上走,驮驮着一口袋书。狼从后面慌慌张张地跑来。]

狼 先生!先生!您快救救我吧!

东 郭 你,你怎么了?

狼 打猎的骑着马追我呢!请您快让我在您的口袋里躲一躲吧!

东 郭 你快走开吧!

狼 您可怜可怜我吧!打猎的马上就要到了!

东 郭 (犹豫了一会儿)好吧!

[东郭先生打开口袋,把里面的书拿出来,想把狼装进去。他怕狼不舒服,这样装,那样装,总是装不好。这时已经能听见马跑的声音了。]

狼 您快点儿吧!请您赶快用绳子把我捆起来,这样就容易装了。

[东郭先生按照狼说的办法把狼装进了口袋,上面又加了些书,放到驴背上,继续往前走。打猎的上。]

打猎的 刚才有一只狼跑过来了，您看见没有？

东 郭 我什么也没有看见啊！

打猎的 一只大狼，哪儿能看不见？快告诉我吧！

东 郭 我忙着走路，真没看见。这儿有很多小路，狼也许从小路逃走了。

[打猎的下。

狼 (在口袋里喊)先生，可以放我出去了。

[东郭先生把狼放出来。狼前后看了看。

狼 我现在饿极了，如果找不到吃的，就一定要饿死。先生既然救我，就该救到底，让我吃了你吧！(向东郭先生扑去。)

东 郭 (害怕地借驴来抵挡)你这没良心的东西！

[一个老人从前边走来。

东 郭 (急忙拉住老人)老先生，老先生！

老 人 什么事？

东 郭 (指着狼)刚才打猎的追它，我把它装在口袋里救了它。打猎的刚走，

它就要吃我，……

狼 (插进来说)他刚才捆住我的腿，把我装在口袋里，还压了很多书，哪儿是救我，明明是想闷死我。这样的人还不该吃吗？

东 郭 (非常生气)我救它，只是因为可怜它，并没有别的意思。

老 人 (想了一下)你们的话我都不信。这个口袋怎么装得下狼？我得看一看狼是怎样装进去的。

[狼又躺下，让东郭先生把它捆起来，装进口袋。

老 人 (对东郭先生)现在你安全了。以后可要记住，对这样的坏东西仁慈，就会害了自己。

[老人和东郭先生一起把狼打死了。

STUDY RESOURCESRequired Vocabulary.A. Familiar Characters in Known Terms:

1. 打开 dǎkāi RC: open up
2. 信 xìn V: believe, have faith in, trust

B. New Characters and Terms.

3. 插 chā V: cut in, pierce, stick in(to), interrupt

- a. 今天买东西的人特别多,大家都站在那里等着给钱。忽然有一个人插进来,站在后边的人都很不高兴。

There were very many people buying things today. Everybody stood there waiting to pay (their) money. Suddenly, somebody cut in. Those standing in the rear were very unhappy.

- b. 大人说话的时候,小孩子不应当插进去。

When adults are talking, children shouldn't interrupt.

4. 袋 dai N: a pocket, a sack, a bag
- 口袋 kǒudài N: pocket, bag, sack

- a. 请先把粮食装在口袋里,再运到别的地方去。

Please first put the grain in bags and then ship it elsewhere.

- b. 在美国买东西不用自己带口袋,都是商店准备的。

In America it is not necessary to bring your own bags when buying things. They are provided by the store.

- c. 冬天很冷,我常把手插在大衣口袋里。

It is very cold in winter. I often stick my hands into the pockets of my overcoat.

5. 挡 dǎng V: resist, stop, impede, obstruct  
(see item #6)

6. 抵  
抵挡

dǐ

V: resist, oppose

dǐdǎng

V: resist, fend off, ward off

- a. 如果一个比你个子大的人打你,你是想办法抵挡,还是逃走呢?

If someone larger than you hits you, are you going to think of a way to resist or are you going to run away?

- b. 城墙是为了抵挡敌人建筑的

City walls were built to resist the enemy.

- c. 一连下了两三个星期的雨,沟里的水快要流出来了.用什么来抵挡呢?

It has been raining continuously for two or three weeks and the water in the ditches will soon overflow. What can we use to resist (the water)?

## 7. 饿

è

SV: be hungry

- a. 昨天晚上我吃饭吃得不多,睡觉以前就饿了.

Last night I didn't eat too much. I was starving before going to sleep.

- b. 世界上有的国家人太多,吃的东西不够,有不少人饿死了.

There are some countries in the world that have too many people and not enough food. Many people have starved to death.

- c. 小妹妹有点儿不舒服,一天都没吃饭.母亲很心疼地说:"你不饿吗?"

Little sister was a bit ill and hadn't eaten all day. Mother said to her very affectionately, "Aren't you hungry?"

## 8. 捆

kǔn

V: tie up, bind

- a. 刚才收音机报告,一个人发现他的邻居躺在床上,手和脚都被捆起来了.

Just now the radio reported that a person discovered his neighbor lying in bed, bound hand and foot.

- b. 有一个人抢了粮食被捆在树上,让大家看他.

A person who had stolen some grain was tied to a tree to let everybody see him.

- c. 农民把菜捆好了,运到城市去.

The peasants tie up their vegetables (properly) and ship them to the cities.



9. 怜

lián

BF: pity, feel tender toward

可怜

kělián

SV/V: be pitiful; pity

- a. 解放以前,长工的孩子,从五,六岁就被迫帮助地主工作,真可怜。

Before Liberation, the children of the hired hands were forced to help the landlords work from the age of 5 or 6. It was really pitiful.

- b. 有的年轻人,不工作,没有饭吃。我一点儿也不可怜他们。

Some youths don't work and have no food to eat. I don't pity them in the least.

- c. 我的生活虽然很苦,但是我不喜欢朋友们可怜我。

Although my life is hard, yet I don't like friends to pity me.

10. 猎

liè

BF: hunt, chase, pursue

打猎

dǎliè

V: hunt

打猎的

dǎliède

N: hunter

- a. 我爸爸喜欢打猎。他有时候带我和哥哥到树林里去打猎。

My father likes to hunt. Sometimes he takes me and my (older) brother into the forest to hunt.

- b. 昨天我们到山上去打猎,什么都没打着。

Yesterday, we went up the mountain to hunt, (but) we didn't get anything.

- c. 打猎的都很勇敢吗?

Are all hunters brave?

11. 评

píng

BF: judge, criticize

评理

pínglǐ

VO: judge (used when a third party gives impartial opinion)

- a. 小学生常常请老师评理,看谁对谁错。

Primary school pupils often ask their teacher to judge to see who is right and who is wrong.

- b. 如果有两辆汽车撞上了,谁可以给他们评理呢?

If two cars collide, who can judge for them?

## 12. 扑

pū

V: rush, spring, pounce

- a. 那几个游击队, 躲在树林里, 等敌人一经过, 就扑过去。

The guerrillas hid in the forest, waited for the enemy to pass, and then rushed out.

- b. 有一个人买了一只小老虎。后来小老虎长大了, 有一天就向那个人扑去, 把那个人吃了。

There was a man who bought a small tiger. Later, the tiger grew up, and one day sprang at the man and ate him.

13. 绳  
绳子

shéng

N: rope, cord, string

shéngzi

N: rope, cord, string (M: 条, 根)

- a. 跳绳(子)是一种很好的运动。

Jumping rope is one type of good exercise.

- b. 我用布做了一个口袋, 上面有一条绳子。把绳子拉紧了, 口袋里的东西就出不来了。

I used cloth to make a bag. At the top is a string, (and if) the string is pulled tight, the things in the bag can't fall out.

## 14. 沿

yán

V/CV: follow, go along (river, street, customs, etc.); along (shore, river, etc.)

- a. 很多人都喜欢沿着海边儿开车看看海, 看看天。

Many people like to drive along the beach and look at the sea and the sky.

- b. 沿海地方的天气, 冬天不太冷, 夏天不太热, 真舒服。

The weather in places along the ocean is not too cold in winter and not too hot in summer. It is really comfortable.

- c. 沿着这条街一直走, 很快就到我买字典的那个书店了。

If you walk straight along this street you will soon reach the bookstore where I bought the dictionary.

15. 捉

zhuō

V: capture, catch, seize

- a. 小老虎知道打猎的要捉它,所以拚命的逃。  
The little tiger knew the hunter wanted to capture him, so he fled for his life.
- b. 我们的小牛受了惊,都吓跑了,我们一定要把它们捉回来。  
(When) our calves became scared, they all ran away. We definitely must catch them and bring them back.
- c. 最近发现有人不断地破坏宿舍里的东西,经过一个星期仔细地观察,终于捉到了那个人。  
Recently it was discovered that somebody has been incessantly destroying things in the dormitory. Through a week of meticulous observation, that person was finally caught.

2. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

16. 安全

ānquán

SV/N/A: safe; safety, security; safely

- a. 我们学校每座楼的门上都有一张纸写着“为了安全,学校外头的人不许进去。”  
On the door of each building in our school there is a piece of paper which states, "For security, people from outside of the school are not permitted to enter."
- b. 不要把钱放在家里,很不安全。  
Don't keep money at home, it's very unsafe.
- c. 在树下躲雨,安全不安全?  
Is it safe avoiding the rain under a tree?

17. 按照

ànzhào

CV: according to, in according with  
(see CR L.6, note #3)

- a. 如果你不按照大家的意见去作,一定没有好结果。  
If you don't do it according to everybody's suggestions, you definitely won't have good results.
- b. 图书馆里的书都是按(照)号码放的,不可以乱插进去。  
The books in the library are placed according to number. You can't stick them in at random.

18. 并  
并起来  
并在一起
- bìng V: combine  
bìngqǐlai V: combine together, keep together  
bìng zài yìqǐ Ph: combine together
- a. 因为我们老师病了没来,所以把我们班和另外一班并在一起了。  
Our teacher didn't come because of illness, therefore our class was combined together with another class.
- b. 坐在椅子上,把两条腿伸开,比并起来舒服。  
Sitting in a chair with both legs extended is more comfortable than keeping them together.
- c. 这两课语法很接近,所以老师把它们并在一起讲了。  
The grammar of these two lessons is very close, so the teacher combined them together and explained it.
19. 不住
- búzhù A: incessantly, continuously, ceaselessly
- a. 有两个人一进图书馆就不住地大声说话,说得让我们不能看书。  
There were two people who incessantly talked loudly as soon as they entered the library. Their talking made us unable to study.
- b. 小弟弟从学校回家就不住地吃。到了吃晚饭的时候,他说他不饿了。  
Little brother returned home from school and ate continuously. At supper time he said he wasn't hungry.
20. 到底
- dàodǐ Ph: to the end, carry out (all the way through)
- a. 你做事就该做到底,不要做一半就不做了。  
When you do something you should do it to the end, don't do half and then stop.
- b. 沿着这条路一直走,走到底就到我们学校了。  
If you walk straight along this road, and walk to the end, you will reach our school.
- c. 我们一定要革命到底,让贫下中农都有机会翻身。  
We definitely must carry out the revolution to the end, to let the poor and lower middle peasants all have an opportunity to become emancipated.

## 21. 好处

hǎochù

N: benevolence

- a. 王国福救了老大娘。老大娘对他说：“我永远忘不了你的好处。”

Wang Guofu rescued the granny, and granny said to him, "I'll never forget your benevolence."

- b. 我们得记住别人对我们的好处。但是不要希望别人记住我们对他们的好处。

We must remember other people's benevolence toward us, but must not hope that other people remember our benevolence toward them.

## 22. 慌张

huāngzhāng

SV: flurried, nervous, frantic

- a. 因为我没复习，老师问我问题，我慌张得不知道说什么。

Because I hadn't reviewed, when the teacher asked me a question I was so nervous that I didn't know what to say.

- b. 他来晚了，慌慌张张地上了火车，火车就开了。

He arrived late. As soon as he nervously boarded the train, it left.

- c. 我弟弟慌慌张张地跑回家。他说有一个人抢了他的自行车，可把他吓坏了。

My little brother ran back home in a flurry. He said someone snatched his bicycle, (and) it really frightened him badly.

## 23. 既然...就

jìrán...jiù

Patt: since ..., such being the case ...

- a. 你既然饿了，就吃吧！

Since you are hungry, have something to eat!

- b. 既然你已经知道这件事了，就不要故意地问了。

Since you already know about this matter, don't purposely ask about it again.

- c. 既然他要坚持那么做，你就不用劝他了。

Since he insists on doing it that way, you needn't persuade him.

- d. 既然那个口袋没装满，你可以再加一些东西进去。

Since that bag isn't full, you can add some more things into (it).

## 24. 借

jiè

V: rely on, lean on, avail oneself of

- a. 到一个没去过的地方,得借着地图来找你要去的地方。

When you go to a place you haven't been before, you must rely on a map to find the places where you want to go.

- b. 没有机器以前,船是借着风的力量前进的。

Before there were machines, ships relied on the wind to advance (move forward).

- c. 楼烧起来了,我和哥哥只有借这条绳子滑下来。

The building started burning and my elder brother and I could only avail ourselves of the rope and slide down.

## 25. 经过

jīngguò

N: what has happened, the whole story, the ins and outs of an occurrence

- a. 李老师把他从前参加革命的经过告诉我们了。

Teacher Li told us about what happened in the past when he joined the revolution.

- b. 那本画报上有日本代表团访问北京的经过。

That pictorial magazine has the whole story of the Japanese delegation's visit to Beijing.

## 26. 明明

míngmíng

A: clearly, obviously, quite clearly

- a. 他明明不知道这件事,你为什么还问他呢?

He obviously doesn't know about this matter. Why are you still questioning him?

- b. 雪明明是白的,他坚持说是黄的。

Snow quite clearly is white. He insists on saying it is yellow.

- c. 刚才我明明看见我的字典在桌子上,现在怎么不见了?

I clearly just saw my dictionary on the table. How come now it has disappeared?

## 27. 压

yā

V: press down, lay (something) on,  
crush, suppress, oppress

## 压伤

yāshāng

RC: crush (injure by pressure)

## 压不住

yābuzhù

RC: unable to suppress, cannot suppress

- a. 一辆汽车撞了我们的房子, 墙被撞倒了。有不少东西压在下边了。

A car collided with our house. The wall was knocked down and many things were crushed underneath.

- b. 没有扩音器以前, 跟群众说话得声音很大, 要不然, 压不住其他的声音。

Before there were loudspeakers, when talking to the masses had to speak in a loud voice, otherwise one cannot suppress other noises.

- c. 雨下得太大了, 山上突然流下来的泥土把公社的羊压伤了。

The rain fell too heavily, and the mud that suddenly flowed down from the hills crushed the commune's sheep.

## 28. 意思

yìsi

N: intention

- a. 我知道他是跟你开玩笑, 没有让你生气的意思。

I know he is joking with you and doesn't have the intention of making you mad.

- b. 既然你没有学外文的意思, 你就不应该到这个学校来。

Since you don't have the intention of learning foreign languages you shouldn't come to this school.

- c. 原来我并没有意思到农村去劳动锻炼, 但是同学们都坚持让我去, 我不能不去。

Originally, I didn't have the intention of going to the rural regions to undergo labor tempering, but my schoolmates insistently asked me to go. I cannot but go.

## 29. 灾难

zāinàn

N: disaster, calamity, misfortune,  
catastrophe (M: 场)

- a. 去年中国北京附近有一场很大的灾难。  
死了很多人。

Last year there was a very great disaster in the vicinity of Beijing, China. Very many people died.

- b. 好几次灾难我都躲过去了。不知道这次怎么样。

I have avoided disaster several times. I wonder what will happen this time.

- c. 中国人有一句话说，要是你损失了钱，就可以让你不会遇见灾难，你信吗？

The Chinese have a saying that if you lose some money you shall avoid encountering disaster. Do you believe this?



Additional Vocabulary.

1. 慈 cí BF: kind, benevolent, compassionate, merciful (see item #5)
2. 狼 láng N: wolf (M: 只)
- a. 他把羊赶到山上去吃草. 忽然来了两只狼, 他立刻大叫: "狼来了! 狼来了!"  
He drove the sheep to the mountain to graze, when suddenly two wolves came. He immediately shouted, "Wolves! Wolves!" (lit. wolves are coming!)
- b. 你听过狼吃小孩的故事吗?  
Have you ever heard the story about a wolf eating a child?
3. 良心 liángxīn BF: instinctive, inborn, conscience N: conscience
- a. 东郭先生救了狼, 狼却要把他吃了. 狼真是没有良心的东西.  
Mr. Dongguo saved the wolf, but the wolf wanted to eat him. Wolves really are conscienceless things.
- b. 我觉得只要是一个人按照良心做事. 别人说什么都没关系.  
I feel that as long as a person does things according to his conscience, it doesn't matter what people say.
4. 闷 mēn SV: stuffy, stifling, suffocating, oppressive (of weather, rooms, etc.)
- 闷死 mēnsǐ RC: stifle, smother, suffocate
- a. 今天的天气很闷, 大概是快要下雨了.  
The weather today is stifling. Probably it is going to rain soon.
- b. 你为什么不打开窗户? 你要闷死吗?  
Why don't you open the window? Do you want to suffocate?
5. 仁慈 réncí BF: benevolence, charity, mercy, humaneness SV/N: kind, merciful, charitable; kindness, mercy, charity
- a. 那位老大爷的心非常仁慈, 他常帮助可怜的人.  
That old gentleman is extraordinarily kindhearted. He often helps pitiful people.
- b. 打猎的仁慈吗?  
Are hunters merciful?

## 6. 驮

tuó

V: carry (on the back of a beast of burden)

- a. 马背上驮的东西太重了, 又走了这么远, 应该让它休息休息。

The things carried on the horse's back are too heavy. It has also walked this far and should be allowed to rest up.

- b. 农民常常让驴或者马驮着粮食到城里去。

The peasants often have the donkeys or horses carry the grain into town.

## 7. 犹

yóu

BF: hesitate, hesitant; still

## 8. 豫

yù

BF: prepare, make ready; before hand

## 犹豫

yóuyù

V/SV/A: waver, hesitate; hesitant; hesitantly

- a. 如果你要冒着危险去救一个人的时候, 应该立刻去, 不要犹豫。

If you want to brave danger when saving someone, you should immediately go. Don't hesitate.

- b. 昨天我和张同志一起去书店买书。我带的钱不够, 就向张同志借, 他犹豫了半天才借给我。

Yesterday, Comrade Zhang and I went together to a bookstore to buy books. I didn't bring enough money, and was going to borrow (some) from Comrade Zhang. He hesitated for a long time before lending it to me.

Proper Names:

## 9. 东郭先生

Dōngguō Xiānsheng

N: (personal name) Mr. Dongguo

PRACTICE EXERCISES

I. Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passage and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

在抗日战争初期很多大学和中学  
的还都没被日本侵略军占领的  
了。那坚个时地要当说：“既然  
你走吧！”

一年的夏天，我的东西都装在一个  
把穿用的绳子和捆口袋，兄弟一个  
我袋里，我就去车站了。

火车在往前开的时候，我想到中  
国受灾难，想到日本侵略和中国人  
能抵挡日本侵略，想到子被不害

的激动，心里感到非常生气，非常激动，  
 的情况，心得流下了眼泪，简直压不住。

一天，车一上来，  
 到了看井起来。  
 走后来候，我捉起  
 高山服的上被鬼  
 座舒站站怕  
 一真快队还  
 着闷，车军是  
 沿又火本可  
 车多在日张，  
 火又城多慌  
 人小很大  
 上个有有

就我。我什插就个我气。  
 我到叫到就我那了客  
 人。轮地方，完题，他听不  
 多才害地答问了他常  
 有后来厉了什么回的诉是非  
 上天子过了我别告可我  
 站半鬼经没几个话慈，对  
 后，了个我他了好很一  
 以等一问是问准备象了  
 车底的开，可地准好豫  
 了到近打去。住经脸犹  
 下走最袋方不已的话，犹  
 一直我口地来照人的  
 一离把么进按敌说

也把我出了  
 了，我他出  
 多叫了快。  
 太他听愉  
 人，来我常  
 的后走，非  
 看的话，我到  
 查的叫感  
 被说袋，确  
 着我口的  
 等着进里  
 也许信装心  
 也真都走，  
 他西我  
 许东叫

车站口袋里感到有一点饿了，我只好很快的把两边走一个到

那晚上了，我们沿着边上，跟着我们走叫听都带了伐见知道，领一夜不开不过，河上，黄不意是

我们在黄河边上，并没有等到时候，就全那

到黄河南边，有子背是我国，到可都准了，到袋走都过了，到口上马经

来我就一个人又上了火车,到我要参加的那个部队去了。

1. What did many college and high school students have to do during the initial stages of the War of Resistance against Japan?
2. What did I want to be? How old was I at that time?
3. What did my family say after I told them what I wanted to be?
4. How did I take my belongings along? Who accompanied me to the railroad station?
5. While I was on the train, what three things did I think about?
  - a.
  - b.
  - c.

To what extent was I affected by my feelings?
6. What were conditions like on the train?
7. What did I see at the station?
8. What was my mental state? What was I afraid of?

9. Where did I wait in line for a long time? What did the devil tell me to do and what did he ask me?
10. Did I have a chance to answer his questions? Why?
11. What was the enemy's face like?
12. What did I think were the reasons he allowed me to go?
13. What was my reaction after he told me that I could go?
14. How did I feel after I left the station? What did I do then?
15. How long did it take us to reach the Yellow River?
16. What did the leader tell us to do?
17. We wouldn't be safe unless we did what?
18. What did we rely on to get all of us safely aboard the boat? After boarding the boat, what were our feelings toward the leader?
19. Who helped us load the bags?
20. Where did they put the bags?

21. Did they know we were coming?

22. Where did I go after I got on the train?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.



Answer Key:

Score

1. They had to run to Chongqing or other cities that had not yet  
been occupied by the invading Japanese army 10
2. a soldier; not yet 20 3
3. "Since you want to go into the military, then you (may) go." 6
4. I put them into two bags, tied them with string and  
carried (them) on my back; nobody 12
5. a. calamities that China had suffered,  
b. the inability of Chinese troops to resist the Japanese  
invasion all at once, and  
c. the ways the Chinese people had been harmed; I felt extremely angry,  
and was so moved that tears flowed. I could not suppress  
(the tears) 24
6. There were many people and it was stifling 3
7. many Japanese troops at the station making inspections 4
8. I really wasn't too nervous; of being seized by the devils 6
9. at the end (of the line); told me to open the bags, and asked me  
what places I had passed through and where was I going 9
0. no; he interrupted me and unceasingly asked several other questions 9
1. appeared to be very kind 3
2. perhaps there were too many people waiting to be inspected,  
(or) perhaps he believed what I had said 9
3. extremely happy 2

14.	a little <u>hungry</u> ; <u>the only thing I could do</u> was put the <u>two bags</u> <u>together</u> , <u>placed</u> them <u>on my back</u> , and <u>very quickly</u> <u>went</u> (out) <u>onto the street</u> <u>to eat</u>	15
15.	<u>all night</u>	1
16.	<u>not to talk</u> and <u>not to move</u>	2
17.	<u>crossed</u> the <u>Yellow River</u>	3
18.	<u>darkness</u> ; we would <u>never</u> <u>forget</u> that <u>leader's</u> <u>benevolence</u>	8
19.	<u>Chinese troops</u>	1
20.	<u>on the backs</u> <u>of horses</u>	3
21.	they <u>knew</u> <u>quite clearly</u>	3
22.	<u>to the unit</u> <u>that I had wanted</u> <u>to join</u>	3
		<hr/>
	Total	139
	Passing	98

I. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

他手里拿着一个<sup>1.</sup>  
布口袋。我明看  
见他。把口明打  
放了。两本进开  
可是。我走过去。  
他打开口袋，请  
看看那些书，让  
候，他犹豫了一时  
说口袋非常生气，  
书。我非又不查  
是他的口袋。能看  
住气走开了。只好忍

2. 我弟弟学习中文<sup>2.</sup>  
已经三年多，可  
是学得并不好。昨



己。”结果为了大家  
的安安全全，按照大家  
的意愿，把狼打死  
了。

4. 我们生产队的老  
王去过教过书，社  
员都叫他王先生。骑  
着一匹马，王背驮着  
两个大口袋，绳子捆  
着一些东西。沿路走  
着，来的时候，王先背  
上小心的压来，两个  
口袋压在他胸上，把  
他压伤了。

5. 昨天小弟要我  
教他中文，我说我  
很忙，不能教他。

只后来小弟时候，并怕站  
 我背身体知道弟时腿弟好  
 我。爸爸身知小的条弟只  
 打爸的爸对。我两小爸，不  
 要到爸爸不踢把起。爸里  
 得跑爸挡。弟脚爸一到那  
 气好借抵弟用爸在踢在

6. 关里，了。家给张的打来发难，第  
 儿子去回要慌子部回里灾他，  
 女屋上人快慌屋全李家大评  
 他小街爱儿她小户老为么批  
 把间到的女了，把窗来以什人  
 李一己李看，死地和后还了爱  
 老在自老一闷张门开了，生他

一句就说：“你这个  
没良心的东西。”

周同志很喜欢骑马。  
周同志去打猎。他常  
骑着马去打猎。经过  
常把打猎的经过告诉  
我，还说了许多好处。  
多打猎的好处。就是  
我打听，可是我的话，因  
不信，他说会骑马，也  
不为我不打猎。要我去  
一次。看我跟他去，一  
次。看我跟他去，一次。  
看我跟他去，一次。可  
是怎么办？

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.

KEY - Model Translations:

Paragraph 1:

He / was holding / a cloth / sack / in his hand. / I / quite clearly / saw /  
1 1 1 2 1 1 2 1  
him / open / the sack / and put in / two books. / But / when / I walked over /  
1 2 2 1 1 1 1 1  
and asked him / to open / the sack / to let me / see / those books, / he /  
1 2 2 1 1 1 1  
hesitated / a bit / and said / that there really weren't any books /  
2 1 1 2  
in the sack. / I was / extremely / angry, / but / couldn't inspect / his /  
2 1 1 1 1 2 1  
sack. / The only thing I could do / was hold my anger / and walk away. / (37/52)  
2 2 2 2

Paragraph 2:

My younger brother / had studied / Chinese / for over three years /  
1 1 1 1  
already, / but / he really didn't / learn it well. / Yesterday /  
1 1 2 1 1  
he said to me, / "I'm thinking / of not studying / Chinese. /  
1 1 1 1  
What do you think about that?" / I said to him, / "Since / you have /  
2 1 2 1  
already / studied / for three years, / (you) ought to / continue / to study. /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
If you / are able / to persist / to the end, / I think / you surely /  
1 2 1 2 1 1  
will be able / to learn it well." / (26/37)  
2 1

Paragraph 3:

Yesterday / we / caught / a wolf. / We / prepared / to tie it up /  
1 1 2 2 1 2 2  
with rope / and let it / starve / to death. / But there was an / old granny /  
2 1 2 2 1 1  
who interrupted, / saying, / "I see / this little thing / is very pitiful, /  
2 1 1 1 2  
(let's) release it." / But / everybody / was against this. / Everybody /  
1 1 1 1 1  
said to her, / "If / (we are) merciful / to / this kind of / bad / thing /  
1 1 2 1 1 1 1  
and release it, / then / it may / harm / others / and may also / harm /  
1 1 1 1 1 1 1



ourselves. / Consequently, / for / the safety / of everybody, /  
1 1 1 1 1  
according to / everybody's / opinion, / the wolf / was killed. / (42/60)  
2 1 2 2 1

Paragraph 4:

Old Wang / of our production team / taught (school) / in the past, /  
1 1 1 1  
(so) all / the commune members / call him / Teacher Wang. / One day /  
1 1 1 1 1  
Teacher Wang / was riding / a horse, / and carried / on the back /  
1 1 1 2 1  
of the horse / were two / big sacks. / There were also / several things /  
1 1 2 1 1  
tied / with string / on top / of the sacks. / (He was) coming along /  
2 2 1 2 2  
a small path, / and when / he was about / to enter / the village, /  
1 1 1 1 1  
Teacher Wang / was careless / and fell / from / the back / of the horse. /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
The two / big sacks / lay / on his chest, / and crushed / him. / (36/51)  
1 2 2 2 2 1

Paragraph 5:

Yesterday, / (my) little brother / wanted me / to teach him / Chinese. /  
1 1 1 1 1  
I said / that I was busy / and couldn't / teach him. / He / was angry /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
and wanted / to beat me. / The only thing I could do / was to run / behind /  
1 1 2 1 1  
Papa's / back / and rely on / Papa's / body / to fend him off. / Papa /  
1 1 2 1 1 2 1  
knew / that little brother / was wrong. / When / little brother / used /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
his feet / to kick / me, / Papa / put / his two legs / together. /  
1 1 1 1 1 2  
Little brother / was afraid that / (he would) kick / Papa, /  
1 1 1 1  
so the only thing he could do / was stand / there / motionless. / (35/49)  
2 1 1 1

Paragraph 6:

Old Li / locked / his daughter / in a small room / and went shopping /  
1 1 1 1 2  
by himself. / Old Li's / wife / returned home, / took one look and saw /  
1 1 1 1 2

(that her) daughter / was about to / suffocate. / She / frantically /  
1 1 2 1 2  
opened / the door / and all / of the windows / of the small room. / Later, /  
2 1 1 1 1 1  
Old Li / returned / and / thought / that some / great / catastrophe /  
1 1 1 1 1 1 2  
had occurred / at home. / His wife / criticized / him, / and the first thing  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
(sentence) / she said was, / "You / unconscionable (conscienceless) /  
1 1 2  
thing!" / (32/45)  
1

Paragraph 7:

Comrade Zhou / likes to / ride / a horse / and go / hunting. / He has often /  
1 1 1 1 1 2 1  
told me / what happened / in hunting, / and has further / told me / of many /  
1 2 2 1 1 1  
of the benefits / of hunting, / but I just / don't believe / what he says, /  
2 2 1 2 1  
because / I can't / ride a horse / and also / don't hunt. /  
1 1 1 1 1  
(If he) wants me / to believe, / (then) let me / go with him / once /  
1 2 1 1 1  
and see, / and only then / will I believe. / But / I have no horse, /  
1 1 2 1 1  
so what can be done about it? / (30/42)  
1

## 第七课 刘胡兰

刘胡兰是山西省文水县云周西村人。

一九四五年秋天，八路军解放了她的家乡。当时刘胡兰才十三岁，就参加了革命工作，当了村里妇女会的干部。在党的教育下，在火热的斗争中，刘胡兰锻炼得越来越坚强。第二年，她光荣地参加了中国共产党。

当解放区的人民正在进行翻身斗争的时候，国民党匪军向解放区发动了进攻。一九四六年冬天，八路军转移了，云周西村变成了游击区，敌人在这儿发动了大“扫荡”。在那艰难危险的环境中，刘胡兰毫不动摇，一直坚持斗争。她带领群众做军鞋，送军粮，积极支援解放战争。

一九四七年一月十二日，敌人突然包围了云周西村，把全村群众都集中到广场上，从人群中抓走了几个人。刘胡兰感到很奇怪：

为什么抓走的都是党员和八路军家属？正在这时，几个匪军冲到她面前，把她也抓走了。

敌人把刘胡兰带到了一座庙里，匪军连长恶狠狠地问：“你叫刘胡兰？”

刘胡兰回答：“我就是刘胡兰！”

“你跟八路军哪些人有联系？”

“和谁也没联系！”

“没联系？有人已经供出你是共产党员了！”

这时，刘胡兰完全明白了：出叛徒了。她把头一扬，说：“说我是共产党员，我就是共产党员！你能把我怎么样！”

“村里还有谁是共产党员？你说出来，马上让你回去，还给你一份土地。”

“就是给我一座金山也不告诉你！”

敌人气得拍着桌子喊：“难道你不怕死吗？”

“怕死就不当共产党了！”刘胡兰坚定地回答。



六个同志在铡刀下英勇牺牲了。匪军连长问刘胡兰：“你投降不投降？”刘胡兰坚决地回答：“我死也不投降！”说完，昂首挺胸向铡刀走去。……

为了人民的事业，刘胡兰献出了年轻的生命。她牺牲的时候还不到十五岁。

毛泽东主席亲笔写了八个大字纪念刘胡兰。这八个字是：

“生的伟大，死的光荣。”

敌人没有办法，只好说：“不谈这些了！只要你答应以后不再给八路军办事就行。”

“那办不到！”刘胡兰立刻把他顶了回去。匪军连长气得大喊：“绑出去铡了！”

刘胡兰又被带到广场上。匪军指着刘胡兰和被绑着的六个人问群众：“这七个人是好人还是坏人？”

“好人！都是好人！”全村的群众一起大声地回答。这声音惊天动地，吓得敌人慌了手脚，急忙用枪对准群众，不许任何人再说话。

### 生词 New words

- |        |                |  |
|--------|----------------|--|
| 1. 省   | (名) shěng      | province   |
| 2. 县   | (名) xiàn       | county   |
| 3. 家乡  | (名) jiāxiāng   | hometown, native place                                     |
| 4. 当时  | (名) dāngshí    | at that time   |
| 5. 才   | (副) cái        | only, just   |
| 6. 妇女会 | fùnǚ huì       | Women's Association  |
| 7. 火热  | (形) huǒrè      | burning hot (“在火热的斗争中” means “in the heat of struggle...”) |
| 8. 斗争  | (动) dòuzhēng   | to struggle, struggle                                      |
| 9. 坚强  | (形) jiāngqiáng | staunch  |

10. 光荣 (形) guāngróng glorious
11. 当...的时候 dāng...de shíhòu when...
12. 匪 (名) fěi bandit
13. 进攻 (动) jìngōng to attack
14. 扫荡 (动) sǎodàng "mopping-up" operation
15. 艰难 (形) jiānnán arduous
16. 环境 (名) huánjìng circumstances, environment
17. 动摇 (动) dòngyáo to waver
18. 军鞋 jūn xié shoes for army men  
[双 shuāng]
19. 集中 (动) jízhōng to assemble, to concentrate
20. 抓 (动) zhuā to arrest, to seize
21. 奇怪 (形) qíguài strange, queer
22. 家属 (名) jiāshǔ family dependent
23. 冲 (动) chōng to rush
24. 面前 (名) miànqián before
25. 庙 (名) miào [座] temple
26. 恶狠狠 (形) èhènhěn malicious and terrifying
27. 联系 (动) liánxi to contact, to connect, connection, to get in touch with
28. 供 (动) gòng to confess

29. 完全 (形) wánquán complete, fully
30. 明白 (动) míngbái to understand, to be clear
31. 出 (动) chū to appear, to happen
32. 叛徒 (名) pàntú renegade, traitor
33. 头 (名) tóu head
34. 扬 (动) yáng to lift up
35. 就是...也... jiùshì...yě... even if
36. 金 (名) jīn gold
37. 气 (动) qì to be angry, to be exasperated
38. 拍 (动) pāi to pound
39. 坚定 (形) jiāndìng staunch
40. 答应 (动) dāying to promise, to consent, to answer
41. 办 (动) bàn to do, to manage
42. 行 (形) xíng it will do, all right
43. 办不到 bàn bù dào never, can never do it
44. 顶 (动) dǐng to rebuff
45. 绑 (动) bǎng to tie, to bind
46. 铡 (动) zhá to chop
47. 惊天动地 jīngtiāndòngdì strong and startling (to startle heaven and earth)

48. 慌了手脚

huānglè  
shǒujiǎo  
scared out of one's wits

49. 对准

duìzhǔn  
to aim at

50. 任何

(代) rènhe  
any

51. 铡刀

(名) zhádāo  
chaff-chopper

52. 英勇

(形) yīngyǒng  
heroic

53. 牺牲

(动) xīshēng  
to sacrifice (one's life)

54. 投降

(动) tóuxiáng  
to surrender

55. 昂首挺胸

ángshǒu-tǐngxiōng  
to hold one's head up

56. 事业

(名) shìyè  
cause

57. 献

(动) xiàn  
to offer, to give

58. 亲笔

qīn bǐ  
in one's own hand-writing

59. 生

(动) shēng  
to live

60. 生的伟大, 死的光荣

shēng de wěidà, a great life, a glorious  
sǐ de guāngróng death

专名 Proper names

1. 刘胡兰

Liú Húlán  
Liu Hu-lan, name of a heroine

2. 山西省

Shānxī Shěng  
Shansi Province

3. 文水县

Wénshuǐ Xiàn  
Wenshui County

4. 云周西村

Yúnrhōuxī Cūn Yunchousi Village

5. 国民党

Guómíndǎng the Kuomintang

词语例解 Notes

1. 当时

(1) 我在五年以前见过他, 当时他还在学习。

(2) 一九四五年八路军解放了我们的村子, 当时的情况我现在还记得很清楚。

2. 就在这一年

“就”有“正”的意思, 放在用“在”组成的表示时间的结构前。例如:

“就”is about the same as “正” and is often put before a phrase formed with “在”denoting time. E.g.

(1) 就在抗日战争开始的那一年, 白求恩大夫来到了中国。

(2) 就在我去找他的时候, 他来了。

“就”也可以用在“是”前。如课文中的“我就是刘胡兰”, 意思是“我正是刘胡兰”。

“就” can also be used before “是”, e.g. “我就是刘胡兰” in the text, meaning: “I'm no other than Liu Hu-lan”.

3. 答应

“答应”有时表示同意别人的要求。例如：

“答应” sometimes means to consent to someone's request.

E.g.

(1) 小红让妈妈星期日带他去公园，妈妈答应了。

(2) 我答应阿里晚上去他家听唱片。

有时表示在别人叫自己的名字时有所反应。例如：

Sometimes it means to respond when another person calls one.

E.g.

(3) 我在楼下一叫他，他就答应了。

4. 行

(1) 我问他：“借我这本字典用，行吗？”他说：“行。”

(2) 今天只有五十个人去参观，有一辆汽车就行了。

练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组： Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 坚强的人 坚强的战士 锻炼得很坚强
2. 发动群众 发动进攻
3. 学习环境 工作环境 学校的环境 艰苦的环境

4. (没)有联系 联系群众 联系很紧张  
取得联系 加强联系 和...联系

5. 出了问题 出了危险

二、选词填空： Fill the blanks:

坚强、坚决、坚持

1. 他\_\_\_\_\_要求参加八路军。
2. 如果我们的意见是正确的，就应该\_\_\_\_\_。
3. 环境越困难，越要\_\_\_\_\_斗争。
4. 刘胡兰在党的教育下，锻炼得越来越\_\_\_\_\_了。
5. 我们要跟敌人进行\_\_\_\_\_的斗争。

三、完成句子： Complete the following sentences:

1. 几年前我见过他，\_\_\_\_\_，现在他已经当中文翻译了。(当时)
2. 在艰苦的斗争中，\_\_\_\_\_。(坚强)
3. 你知道吗？这本书\_\_\_\_\_。(就)
4. \_\_\_\_\_弟弟突然回来了。(正)
5. 他回国以前，我对他说：\_\_\_\_\_。(联系)
6. “小红，小红！”我叫了半天\_\_\_\_\_。(答应)

7. 那些青年学生 \_\_\_\_\_ 到农村去劳动  
锻炼。(坚决)

8. 夏礼说：“咱们今天晚上去看电影吧。”  
我说：“\_\_\_\_\_”。(行)

四、造句： Make sentences with:

1. 当时      2. 就是...也...      3. 行

五、把下列句子译成中文，用上括号里的词语： Translate  
the following into Chinese, using the words and phrases in the  
brackets:

1. If this sentence is translated like this, will it be all right?  
(行)
2. I called out several times outside the dormitory but no-  
body answered. (答应)
3. We are going to visit the Historical Museum tomorrow,  
please get in touch with them by telephone this afternoon.  
(联系)
4. He promised to teach us to sing some Chinese songs this  
evening. (答应)



STUDY RESOURCESI. Required Vocabulary.A. Familiar Characters in Known Terms:

1. 就是...也 jiùshi ... yě      Patt: even if ... still ...

B. New Characters and Terms:

2. 绑      bǎng      V: tie, bind

- a. 我们怕小牛再跑了, 所以一追上它, 就用绳子把它的腿绑起来了。  
We were afraid that the calf would run away again, so as soon as we caught up with it we tied its legs with rope.
- b. 因为汽车不够大, 自行车放不进去, 只好绑在汽车后头。  
Since the car isn't big enough, we can't place the bicycle inside. The only thing we can do is tie it onto the back of the car.
- c. 这张照片上, 被绑着的那个人是我们的区长。  
In this photo the person tied up is our district leader.

3. 冲      chōng      V: rush or dash forward, rush

- a. 我们躲在树林里等敌人, 他们一来我们就冲上去消灭他们。  
We hide in the forest and wait for the enemy. As soon as they come we rush out and annihilate them.
- b. 班长举着枪带领我们向敌人冲去。  
The squad leader raised his gun and led us rushing toward the enemy.

4. 荡      dàng      BF: cleanse, wash away; subdue, quell (rebellion) (see item #18)

5. 刀      dāo      N: knife, various kinds of knives, blade (M: 把) (see item #30)

6. 恶      è      SV/BF: evil, ferocious, wicked; loath, hate (see item #11)

7. 匪 fěi N/BF: bandits, insurgents, rebel  
 匪军 fěijūn N: bandit troops, rebel army  
 (note: the term "匪" is used by the faction in power when referring to the faction not in power)
- 共匪 gòngfěi N: Communist bandits
- a. 共产党叫国民党的军队“匪军”。  
 The communists call the Nationalist troops "bandit troops."
- b. 国民党叫共产党“共匪”。  
 The Nationalists call the communists "communist bandits."
- c. 如果你在报上看见“匪”字，你就会想到一定又有人抢别人的钱或是东西了。  
 If you see the character "匪" in the newspaper, you can imagine that there surely must be somebody snatching somebody's money or things again.
8. 攻 gōng V/BF: attack, assault, raid  
 进攻 jìngōng V/N: assault, attack
- a. 一九四九年解放军并没有进攻北京城，就进城了。  
 In 1949, the Liberation army really didn't assault Beijing, they just entered it.
- b. 明天夜里进攻敌人的准备，做好了吗？  
 Are preparations ready for assaulting the enemy tomorrow night?
9. 光 guāng N/BF: light; bright, glorious  
 (see item #17)
10. 何 hé BF: (literary interrogative particle, e.g., what, why, when, where, which, etc.)  
 (see item #16)
11. 狠 hěn SV/BF: vicious, malicious, cruel, ruthless  
 恶狠狠 èhěnhěnhēn SV: ferocious, fierce, malicious and terrifying
- a. 他的样子虽然是恶狠狠的，可是他的心并不坏。  
 Although he looks ferocious, he really isn't evil-hearted.

- b. 我去张小华家,刚走到门口,突然门开了,一个人恶狠狠地问我:“你找谁?”吓得我说不出话来。

I went to the home of Zhang Xiaohua and had just walked to the doorway when suddenly the door opened and a man ferociously asked me, "Who are you looking for?!" I was so scared I became speechless.

- c. 鬼子见了齐小钢恶狠狠地说:“快说八路军在哪里,不然我就杀了你。”

The devil saw Qi Xiaogang and said ferociously, "Quickly tell me where the Eighth Route Army is, otherwise I'll kill you."

12. 环 huán N/BF: a ring; around, surround, encircle (see item #13)

13. 境 jìng N/BF: situation, circumstances, condition

环境 huánjìng N: circumstances, environment, surroundings

- a. 很多世界上伟大的人,都是在艰苦的环境中长大的。

Very many of the world's great men grew up in very difficult circumstances.

- b. 既然你这么不喜欢你的工作环境,你为什么不开呢?

Since you dislike your work environment so much, why don't you leave?

- c. 我觉得郊区的环境比城市的好。

I feel that the suburban environment is better than that of the city.

14. 联 lián BF: unite, connect, join

联系 liánxi N/V: contact; connect, get in touch with

- a. 我一当了八路军就和家里没有联系了。

Since I became an Eighth Route Army soldier, I've had no contact with my family.

- b. 美国派了一位代表到北京去见华主席,是为了加强两国的联系。

The United States sent a delegate to Beijing to see Chairman Hua in order to strengthen contact between the two countries.

- c. 三天以前我就到了敌人占领的地方,但是一直还没办法和我们的游击队联系.

I arrived in enemy occupied territory three days ago, but up to now I've had no way of getting in touch with our guerrillas.

15. 叛 pàn BF: to rebel, revolt, betray  
(see item #23)
16. 任 rèn BF: appoint, let, allow, tolerate  
任何 rènhé Sp: any, whatever (person, place or thing)

- a. 除了这个地方(以外),我任何地方都没去过.

Aside from this place, I have never been any place.

- b. 王国福真是一个好人.任何人有任何困难,他都帮助他们.

Wang Guofu is really a good person. If any person has any difficulty he will help them.

17. 荣 róng BF: glory, honor, prosperous  
光 guāngróng SV/N: glorious; glory, honor

- a. 去年王同志光荣地被选为工厂的领导干部.

Last year, Comrade Wang was gloriously elected a leading cadre of the factory.

- b. 学生的成绩好,也是老师的光荣.

Students' good achievements in their studies are also glory for the teacher.

- c. 有人觉得和有名的人谈话是一种光荣.

Some people feel that talking with a famous person is a kind of honor.

18. 扫 sǎo V: sweep, clean up, mop up, wipe out
- 扫荡 sǎodàng V/N: mop up (enemy), wipe out; "mopping-up" operation
- a. 我们包围了敌人,同时还进行了大扫荡。  
We surrounded the enemy and at the same time also carried out a "mopping-up" operation.
- b. 敌人占领了我们村子以后,并没有发动扫荡。  
After the enemy occupied our village, they really didn't launch any "mopping-up" operation.
19. 牲 shēng BF: domestic animal (in ancient Chinese, referred to sacrificial beasts; now used to refer to sacrifices in general) (see item #24)
20. 省 shěng N: a province
- a. 中国有多少省? 北京在哪一省?  
How many provinces are there in China? In which province is Beijing?
- b. 中国沿海各省的天气好,人也比较多。  
The weather in all the provinces along the coast of China is good, and there are also comparatively more people.
- c. 山西,山东,河北,河南都是省的名字。  
Shanxi, Shandong, Hebei and Henan are all names of provinces.
21. 属 shǔ V/BF: belong to, be subordinate to; a close relative
- 家属 jiāshǔ N: family dependents, dependents, one's family
- a. 抗日战争的时候,很多人都跟他们的家属分开了。  
At the time of the war of resistance against Japan, many people were separated from their dependents.
- a. 不少学生家属从很远的地方来参加他们的毕业典礼。  
Many students' families come from very distant places to attend their (the students') graduation ceremonies.

22. 投 tóu V/BF: throw or toss in, submit to; join  
(see item #27)
23. 徒 tú BF: disciple, follower, adherent  
叛徒 pàntú N: traitor, renegade, rebel  
(has become an emotionally charged term applied to those believing in an ideology different than one's own)
- a. 我相信国民党和共产党里都有叛徒。  
I believe there are traitors in both the Nationalist and the Communist Parties.
- b. 明明我们中间有叛徒和敌人联系,可是没办法找出来谁是叛徒。  
Quite clearly there is a traitor among us in contact with the enemy, but there is no way of finding out who the traitor is.
- c. 因为我的思想和家里人不一样,他们说我是叛徒。  
Because my thoughts are different from those of my family, they say that I am a rebel.
24. 牺 xī BF: sacrifice, sacrificial offerings  
牺牲 xīshēng N/V: sacrifice (one's life, belongings, etc., for the sake of something of greater value)
- a. 很多战士为了国家把生命牺牲了。这样的牺牲真伟大。  
Many soldiers sacrificed their lives for their country. This kind of sacrifice is really great!
- b. 为国牺牲的那些战士们的家属真可怜。  
Dependents of those soldiers who sacrificed (their lives) for their country are really pitiful.
- c. 他不要为任何人牺牲一点儿他的时间。  
He doesn't want to give up the least bit of time for anyone.

25. 县

xiàn

N: a county

- a. 县比省小, 省里头有县。

A county is smaller than a province. There are counties within a province.

- b. 我只知道毛主席是湖南省人, 可是不知道是哪一县。

I only know that Chairman Mao is a native of Hunan Province, but I don't know which county.

- c. 敌人在我们县发动了大扫荡。我们的县长被打死了。

The enemy launched a large "mopping-up" operation in our county, and our county chief (magistrate) was killed.

26. 乡

xiāng

N/BF: village, hamlet, hometown, native district; district, region

家乡

jiāxiāng

N: (one's) hometown, native place, native district

- a. 中国很多年纪大的人都不喜欢离开他们的家乡。

Many elderly persons in China do not like to leave their native places.

- b. 小张一听说他的家乡有了灾难, 就立刻回去了。

As soon as Little Zhang heard that there had been a disaster in his hometown, he immediately returned (there).

27. 降

xiáng

BF: submit, surrender

投降

tóuxiáng

N/V: surrender

- a. 我们军队包围了敌人的据点, 他们就投降了。

As soon as our troops surrounded the enemy's fortified points, they surrendered.

- b. 第二次世界大战日本没有条件地投降了。

In World War II Japan surrendered unconditionally.

28. 鞋 xié N: shoes, footwear (M: 只 = one, 双 = pair)
- 军鞋 jūnxié N: military footwear
- a. 军人穿的鞋叫军鞋。  
Footwear worn by soldiers is called military footwear.
- b. 从前的军鞋是用布做的, 很快就破了。  
Previously, military footwear was made of cloth and wore out quickly.
- c. 刘胡兰 (Liú Húlán) 带领群众做军鞋, 积极支援解放军。  
Liu Hulan led the masses in making military footwear, actively supporting the liberation army. (Liú Húlán -- see Additional Vocabulary, item #8)

29. 摇 yáo V: shake, quake
- 动摇 dòngyáo N/V: waver, falter, be swayed, shaken, rocked (in one's beliefs, opinions, etc.)
- a. 从前他非常相信共产党, 现在有些动摇了。  
Previously he really believed in the Communist Party. Now he is wavering somewhat.
- b. 如果我们的县长已经决定这么做了, 谁也不能使他动摇。  
If our county chief has already decided to do it this way, nobody can make him waver.
- c. 虽然在危险的环境中, 他毫不动摇, 坚持奋斗下去。  
Although in dangerous circumstances, he didn't waver in the least, but persisted in struggling.

30. 铡 zhá V: chop (chaff), cut (grass),
- 铡刀 zhádāo N: (chaff-)chopper, (grass-)cutter (a knife used to cut grass or hay) (M: 把)
- a. 我只听说过用铡刀铡死人, 可是并没看见过。  
I've only heard of a chaff-chopper being used to chop someone to death, but I've never actually seen it (done).
- b. 在农场上人们用铡刀铡草。  
On the farm, people use grass-cutters to cut grass.



- c. 铡刀和我们平常用的刀不一样。  
Chaff-choppers are different from the knives we ordinarily use.

31. 抓

zhuā

V: arrest, seize, take; grasp, snatch, grab

- a. 敌人进了城我的朋友被抓走了。从此就再没听见他的消息了。  
When the enemy entered the city, my friend was taken away. From then on, no news was ever heard of him again.
- b. 如果匪军发现抓错了人,匪军会把他们放回来吗?  
If the bandit army discovers that it has seized people by mistake, would it release them?
- c. 公园里一个穿着破衣服的人,把别人桌子上吃的东西抓了就跑,我想他一定是饿极了。  
In the park a man wearing worn-out clothing snatched some food from someone else's table and ran away. I think he surely must be extremely hungry.

C. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

32. 办

bàn

V: do, manage, handle

办事

bànshì

VO: do business, manage an affair, handle business

办不到

bàndudào

RC/Ph: can never do it, it's impossible, (it) can't be done

- a. 在解放以前,很多大学生都给八路军办事。  
Before liberation, many college students worked for (managed affairs for) the Eighth Route Army.
- b. 刘胡兰(Liú Húlán) 对匪军说:"你叫我投降!那是办不到的事情!"  
Liu Hulan said to the bandit soldiers, "You order me to surrender! That's something that can't be done!"
- c. 这件事情很难办,他办不到。  
This matter is very hard to handle. He can't do it.

33. 才

cái

A; only, just

- a. 现在才三点半,离下课还有半个钟头呢!  
It's only 3:30 now. There is still a half hour before class is dismissed.

b. 小张才十六岁就大学毕业了。

Little Zhang is only 16 years old, (yet) he has graduated from college.

c. 我们班才有两个学生, 练习说话的机会很多。

Our class only has two students. There are many opportunities to practice speaking.

34. 出

chū

V: appear, happen, occur;  
meet with or have something  
happen or occur that is bad or  
unpleasant

a. 他的样子很紧张, 好象出了什么事情。

He looks very nervous. It seems like something has happened.

b. 我回家的时候, 在路上出了问题, 所以耽误了两天。

When I was returning to my native place, something happened (a problem occurred) on the way, so I was delayed for a couple of days.

c. 一定是出了叛徒了, 不然匪军怎么知道谁是共产党呢?

There must be a traitor, otherwise how would the bandit troops know who is a communist?

35. 答应 dāying

V: promise; consent to, assent to,  
agree to (a request, plan, terms,  
etc.); answer, reply  
(see CR L. 7, note #3)

a. (我)能办到的事情, 我才答应。如果办不到我就不答应。

I'll only agree to it if it is a matter I can handle. If I can't do it, I won't agree to it.

b. 老师答应下月带我们去参观工业展览会。

The teacher promised to take us to visit the industrial exhibition next month.

c. “小钢! 小钢!”我叫了半天, 他才答应。

Only after I called "Little Gang, Little Gang!" for a long time did he answer.

36. 当... dāng ... Patt: when, at the time when  
的时候 de shíhòu

- a. 当我们吃饭的时候,我们应该想到农民的辛苦。  
When we eat our meals, we should think of the hardships of the peasants.
- b. 当火车正在前进的时候,不可以把手伸出去。  
When the train is advancing, you shouldn't stick your hand out.
- c. 当第二次世界大战结束的时候,我大哥中学刚毕业。  
When World War II came to an end, my elder brother had just graduated from high school.

37. 当时 dāngshí A: at that time; at that very moment

- a. 一九六五年我在这个学校学日文,当时还没有这座楼。  
In 1965 I studied Japanese at this school. At that time they didn't have this building yet.
- b. 张老师给我们讲了一个中国被侵略的故事,当时我们都很激动。  
Teacher Zhang told us a story about the invasion of China. At that time we were all very moved.
- c. 史文要请我到他家吃饭,当时我没答应。  
Shi Wen wanted to invite me home for a meal. At that time I didn't say yes.

38. 顶 dǐng V: rebuff, oppose (lit. push or ram against with the head)

- a. 因为他说的不是真的,所以我立刻把他顶回去了。  
I immediately rebuffed him because what he said wasn't true.
- b. 当时我很生气,所以顶了他。后来想了想,我真不应该顶他。  
At that time, I was very angry, so I rebuffed him. Later, I thought it over. I really shouldn't have rebuffed him.
- c. 谁的意见跟他不一样,他就顶谁。  
If anyone's opinion is different from his, he will oppose him.

39. 斗争 dòuzhēng V/N: struggle, struggle against
- a. 共产党很喜欢用“阶级斗争”这个词。  
The communists like to use the term "class struggle."
- b. 我们生产队昨天举行了斗争大会。  
Yesterday our production team held a "struggle meeting."
- c. 有的社会主义国家里,农民还常常跟地主斗争。  
In some socialist countries the peasants are often still struggling against the landlords.
40. 对准 duìzhǔn RC: aim at, aim, line up (on or with)
- a. 放枪以前得先对准了。  
Before firing the gun, you must first aim properly.
- b. 打猎的没等对准小老虎就放枪了,所以没打着。  
The hunter fired the gun without waiting to aim properly at the little tiger, so he didn't hit it.
- c. 敌人用铡刀对准了区长的头铡下去。这种情况我永远不能忘记。  
The enemy aimed the chopper at the head of the district leader and chopped downward. I'll never be able to forget such a situation.
41. 供 gòng BF/V: confess, testify, offer testimony
- a. 匪军用枪对准刘胡兰(Liú Húlán)说:  
“如果你不供出来,我就杀了你!”  
The bandit soldier aimed his gun at Liu Hulan and said, "If you don't confess, I'll kill you!"
- b. 刘胡兰(Liú Húlán)说:“我什么都不知道,你要我供什么?”  
Liu Hulan said, "I don't know anything. What do you want me to confess?"
- c. 一个叛徒已经供出我们是八路军了。  
A traitor has already testified that we are Eighth Route Army soldiers.

42. 国民党 Guómíndǎng N: Nationalist Party, Guomindang  
a. 国民党的意见和共产党的完全不一样。

The opinions of the Nationalist Party are completely different from those of the Communist Party.

- b. 国民党的历史比共产党长几十年。

Compared to the Communist Party, the history of the Guomindang is several score (tens) of years longer.

43. 火热 huǒrè SV: fiery, heated, burning hot

- a. 中国现在的年轻人都是在火热的斗争中教育出来的。

The Chinese youths of today were all educated in fiery struggle.

- b. 在火热的战争中, 很多年轻的战士们牺牲了生命。

Many youthful soldiers sacrificed their lives in fiery warfare.

- c. 许多中学毕业生, 一到了生产队就参加了火热的生产斗争。

As soon as many high school graduates arrive at the production team, they would join in the fiery struggle for production.

44. 集中 jízhōng V: concentrate, assemble

- a. 区长把群众都集中在广场上, 对大家讲话。

The district leader assembled the masses in the square and spoke to everybody.

- b. 我们要集中所有力量来消灭敌人。

We must concentrate all of our strength in order to annihilate the enemy.

- c. 如果你的精神不集中, 什么事情都做不好。

If you don't concentrate your attention (spirit), you won't be able to do anything well.

45. **坚定** jiāndìng SV: staunch, firm, determined
- a. 他的思想非常坚定, 谁劝他也没用。  
He is extraordinarily determined in his ideas. It's no use for anyone to (try to) persuade him.
- b. 他对敌人很坚定地说: “我死也不投降!”  
He said very determinedly to the enemy, "Even if I die I won't surrender!"
- c. 连长很坚定地告诉我们: “明天的大扫荡, 我们一定胜利。”  
The company commander very staunchly told us, "We will definitely be victorious in tomorrow's big mopping-up operation."
46. **艰难** jiānnán SV/N: difficult, arduous, trying; difficulty, hardship
- a. 虽然在艰难的环境中, 他还是继续不断地努力。  
Although in very difficult circumstances, he still continued to incessantly do his best.
- b. 在山区运军粮非常艰难。  
In mountainous areas, transporting military foodstuffs is extraordinarily difficult.
- c. 中国经过了无数的艰难, 才有今天的成就。  
China's achievements today came only through many years of hardships.
47. **坚强** jiānqiáng SV: staunch, firm, unyielding
- a. 他在艰苦的斗争中, 锻炼得越来越坚强了。  
He was tempered in hard struggling, and he has become more unyielding as time goes by.
- b. 坚强的人是不怕艰难的。  
Persons who are staunch are not afraid of hardship.
- c. 一个国家有坚强的战士才能取得最大的胜利。  
A country must have staunch soldiers before it can win the greatest victories.

48. 面前 miànqián PW: before, in front of (someone)
- a. 刘胡兰 (Liú Húlán) 走到敌人面前很镇静地说：“你要杀，就杀吧！”  
Liu Hulan walked before the enemy and very calmly said, "If you want to kill me, then kill me!"
- b. 问题在我们面前，怎么能不解决呢！  
The problem is before us, how can we help but solve it!
49. 明白 míngbai V/SV: understand, be clear
- a. 连长说如果有人不明白，他就再讲一次。  
The company commander said that if someone doesn't understand he would explain it again.
- b. 这封信说得明明白白地他今天要来，为什么到现在还没来呢？  
This letter very clearly says that he is coming today. How come, up till now, he still hasn't arrived?
- c. 老师说的很明白，我们都懂了。  
The teacher said it very clearly. We all understood.
50. 气 qì SV/V: be angry, be exasperated; angry, make (someone) angry
- a. 你不应该气你爱人。  
You shouldn't anger your spouse.
- b. 哥哥的自行车被弟弟弄坏了，他气得连饭也没吃。  
Elder brother's bicycle was broken by his younger brother. He was so mad that he couldn't even eat.
51. 亲笔 qīnbǐ Ph: in one's own handwriting
- a. 人民英雄纪念碑上头的字是毛主席亲笔写的。  
The characters on the Monument to the People's Heroes were written in Chairman Mao's own handwriting.
- b. 这封信不是我们连长亲笔写的，他的字我认得出来。  
This letter was not written in our company commander's own handwriting. I recognize his handwriting (characters).
- c. 他的手伤了，不能亲笔给他的家属写信，我只好替他写。  
His hand was injured. He couldn't write to his dependents in his own hand. The only thing I could do was write for him.

## 52. 事业 shìyè

N: a (great) cause, undertaking, task; a person's lifework (business or profession), career

- a. 为了人民的事业, 我们应该艰苦奋斗到底。

For the people's cause, we should live plainly and work hard to the end.

- b. 每一个人都应该决定自己的事业。

Each person should decide upon their own career.

- c. 人人都应该把精神集中在他们的事业上。

Everyone should concentrate his spirit on his profession.

## 53. 献 xiàn

V: give, offer, present

- a. 他把所有的时间都献给生产队了。

He gave all (his) time to the production team.

- b. 不少共产党员, 当国民党和共产党斗争的时候, 献出了他们的生命。

When the Nationalist and Communist Parties were struggling, many Communist Party members gave their lives.

- c. 他们参加八路军的时候, 都决定把生命献给国家。

When they joined the Eighth Route Army, they all decided to offer their lives for the country.

## 54. 扬 yáng

V: lift, raise, foster, spread

- a. 看高的地方, 一定得扬头。

When you look at high places you must lift your head.

- b. 敌人对绑着的人说: "把头扬起来!"

The enemy said to the bound man, "Lift up your head!"

- c. 刘胡兰 (Liú Húlán) 把头一扬说: "我还要给八路军办事, 你能把我怎么样!"

Liu Hulan lifted her head and said, "I'm still going to work for the Eighth Route Army. What can you do about me?" (A rhetorical question meaning, "You can't stop me!")



55.

英勇

yīngyǒng

A/SV: heroic, brave

- a. 人人都应该纪念英勇牺牲的战士们。

We should all commemorate soldiers who heroically sacrificed (themselves).

- b. 我们的班长非常英勇, 虽然受了重伤, 还要继续战斗。

Our squad leader is extraordinarily brave. Although he suffered severe injuries, he still insisted on continuing the fighting.

- c. 没有英勇的战士, 就没办法取得胜利。

Without brave soldiers there would be no way to achieve victory.

II. Additional Vocabulary.

## 1. 昂首挺胸

ángshǒu  
tǐngxiōngPh: hold one's head up and thrust out one's chest  
("昂首" hold up head -- gesture of boldness; "挺胸" thrust out chest -- gesture of self-confidence)

- a. 军人走路的时候,都得昂首挺胸,才显得有精神。

When soldiers walk, they must hold their heads up and thrust their chests out, and only then will they appear to have spirit.

- b. 刘胡兰(Liú Húlán) 昂首挺胸地向铡刀走去,被敌人铡死了。

With head high and chest out, Liu Hulan walked to the chopper and was chopped to death by the enemy.

## 2. 妇女

fù

BF: woman, female, wife

## 妇女会 fùnǚhuì

N: Women's Association

- a. 在抗日战争的时候,妇女会的干部带领群众积极支持战争。

During the war of resistance against Japan, the cadre of the Women's Association led the masses in actively supporting the war.

- b. 去年夏天,中华人民共和国妇女会请了一些外国人到北京去参观。

Last summer, the People's Republic of China's Women's Association invited a number of foreigners to visit Beijing.

## 3. 慌了手脚

huāngle  
shǒujiǎoPh: become unnerved; become frantic, scared out of one's wits  
(similar to our slang, "become unglued")

- a. 一位阶级兄弟忽然昏迷了,吓得我们慌了手脚,不知道怎么办。

A class brother suddenly fainted. This scared us so, we became unnerved, and didn't know what to do.

- b. 当我回家的时候,看见一个人拿着我的收音机从窗户爬出来。一看见我,慌了手脚,放下收音机就逃走了。

When I was returning home I saw a man climbing out of the window carrying my radio. As soon as he saw me, he became unnerved, put the radio down and fled.

4. 惊天动地 jīngtiān dòngdì Ph: earthshaking (lit. startle heaven and move the earth)

a. 他年轻的时候,作过惊天动地的大事业。

When he was young he performed earthshaking tasks.

b. 在天安门广场前,群众一起大声喊:"毛主席万岁!"这声音真是惊天动地。

In front of Tian An Men Square the masses loudly shouted in unison, "Long live Chairman Mao!" The noise was really earthshaking.

5. 庙 miào N: temple (M: 座)

a. 中国很多山上都有庙。

There are temples on many mountains in China.

b. 住在庙里的人穿的衣服,吃的东西都和我们不一样。

The clothes worn and the food eaten by people living in temples are different from ours.

6. 拍 pāi V: strike, slap, clap, pat (with open hand)

a. 爸爸一生气,就用手拍桌子,声音真大。

As soon as papa gets angry, he slaps the table with his hand. The noise is really loud.

b. 他跑得太快摔倒了,爬起来以后拍拍衣服上的土又跑。

He ran too fast and fell down. After he got up he patted (off) the dirt on his clothing and ran again.

7. 生的伟大,死的光荣 shēngde wěidà, sǐde guāngróng Ph: a great life, a glorious death

a. "生的伟大,死的光荣"是毛主席亲笔为纪念刘胡兰(Liú Húlán)写的。

"A great life, a glorious death," was written by Chairman Mao in his own hand in commemoration of Liu Hulan.

b. 刘胡兰(Liú Húlán)死的时候才十五岁,但是她"生的伟大,死的光荣。"

When Liu Hulan died she was only 15 years old, but she "lived a great life and died a glorious death."

Proper Names:

- |     |      |               |                       |
|-----|------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 8.  | 刘胡兰  | Liú Húlán     | N: (personal name)    |
| 9.  | 山西省  | Shānxī Shěng  | PW: Shanxi Province   |
| 10. | 文水县  | Wénshuǐ Xiàn  | PW: Wenshui County    |
| 11. | 云周西村 | Yúnzhōuxī Cūn | PW: Yunzhouxi Village |

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

I. Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passage and answer the question that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

昨天晚上我看了一个电影。那个电影的故事是说在中国的一个县里(我忘记是哪一省,哪一县了)常常被附(我近共县离别的县联系。每次那几个人的财产。那些人要是不受)的县都是先去抢他们的财产。那些人要是不受的时候,都死,再没有任何办法来抵挡。要是投降,就得牺牲生命;要是投降,就得受压迫。

这个县的环境太艰难了。当时有少数人已经动摇。这些人想带他们却不少家属跑到别县去,说“就是被匪军很坚定地把头扬起来。”

人游的士时胸  
 两个的们战的挺  
 两党他位难首  
 派民帮七艰昂  
 决定国会派最地  
 决请队了在强下  
 人去去应县坚一  
 的头游答个很争  
 县外道的这都斗  
 这个乡知真当士军  
 这家的队去战匪  
 来的他击县位跟  
 他们来,游们七要  
 到他队的,他这来  
 到击忙的,候出

后,枪,子里  
 以们村沟  
 县给他个沟,  
 这个给每了  
 这来,县挖  
 了起全墙,  
 一到集中在高  
 一集枪了  
 士们都开筑  
 战人们建  
 位的他都  
 七县的教们水  
 这全时他了  
 就把周围,放  
 就刀,周还

他,了不准  
 了,到人对  
 攻墙的地  
 进高里勇  
 来过县英  
 又冲次都  
 军地这且  
 匪狠荡,并  
 上狠扫降,  
 晚恶始投枪  
 一天马开没开  
 一着来摇军  
 有骑县动匪  
 们都个没些  
 们这但这

这次他全  
 这来完  
 么后,才  
 怎敢,时  
 奇怪,勇  
 奇的样的  
 得这士  
 觉然战  
 都突位  
 军会七  
 匪人那  
 些的了  
 这县现  
 这个发  
 这们

明白为什么这个县准备得这么好。

他们打了差不多一夜，有些匪军被枪打死，有些匪军被刀铡死，有的受了重伤，别的都跑了。这个县得到了光荣的胜利。这个县的人，以前以为办不到的事，现在办到了！

除了这个县里有很多人牺牲了他们的生命以外，还有三位战士为了人民的事业也献出了他们的生命。

这真是一个惊天动地的故事！

- . Where did the story take place?
  
- . What happened to the county?
  
- . What did the bandits always do first?
  
- . What happened afterwards?

5. How did people in the county respond to these attacks?
6. What happened if they didn't surrender? If they did?
7. What did those who wavered want to do?
8. What did the people finally decide to do?
9. What did the seven soldiers do when things were most difficult for the county?
10. What did the seven soldiers do as soon as they arrived?
11. What did they do around all of the villages in the county?
12. In what manner did the bandits rush over the high wall?
13. After they rushed over the high wall, what did they begin?
14. What did the people do?
15. After the bandits had breached the high wall, what did the people do in response to their attack?



16. How long did they fight?
17. What happened to the bandit army soldiers?
18. As a result of their victory, what in fact had the people done?
19. What had the three soldiers done?
20. What did I think of the story?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.

Answer Key:

	<u>Score</u>
1. the author <u>forgot</u> <u>which province</u> and <u>which county</u> 1                  2                  2	5
2. <u>often</u> was <u>attacked</u> and <u>destroyed</u> 1                  2                  1	4
3. <u>seized</u> <u>several people</u> , <u>tied</u> them to <u>trees</u> and <u>chopped</u> them <u>to death</u> 2                  1                  2                  1                  2                  1	9
4. they <u>robbed</u> ( <u>stole</u> ) their <u>property</u> 1                                  1	2
5. they were <u>scared out of their wits</u> , and <u>didn't have any way</u> to <u>resist</u> 2                                  1                                  1	4
6. their <u>lives</u> would be <u>sacrificed</u> ; they would be <u>oppressed</u> 1                                  2                                  1	4
7. take their <u>families</u> ( <u>dependents</u> ) to <u>another county</u> 2                                  1                  2	5
8. to <u>send</u> <u>two people</u> to go <u>outside</u> their <u>native district</u> to <u>invite</u> some 1                  1                  1                  2                  1	
<u>Nationalist guerrillas</u> to come 2                  1	9
9. they <u>staunchly</u> <u>held their heads up</u> , <u>thrust out their chests</u> and wanted 1                  2                  2	
to <u>struggle</u> with the <u>bandit army</u> 2                  2	9
10. they <u>assembled</u> the <u>people</u> of the <u>entire county</u> , gave them <u>guns</u> and 2                  1                  2                  1	
<u>knives</u> , and <u>taught them</u> to <u>fire</u> the <u>guns</u> 2                  1                  1                  1	11
11. they <u>built</u> <u>high walls</u> and <u>dug</u> <u>ditches</u> , and further filled the ditches 1                  1                  1                  1	
with <u>water</u> 1	5
12. <u>ferociously</u> 2	2
13. began " <u>mopping-up</u> " operations 2	2
14. they <u>didn't waver</u> or <u>surrender</u> 2                  2	4
15. they <u>heroically</u> <u>aimed</u> at the <u>bandits</u> and <u>fired</u> 2                  2                  2                  1	7
16. <u>almost</u> the <u>whole night</u> 1                  1	2
17. some were <u>killed</u> <u>by guns</u> , some were <u>chopped</u> <u>to death</u> , and some were 1                  1                  2                  1	
<u>severely wounded</u> , and others <u>fled</u> 1                  1                  1	8
18. the people <u>did</u> what they <u>previously</u> <u>thought</u> <u>could never have been done</u> 2                  1                  1                  2	6

9. gave their lives for the people's cause  
2 1 1 2

6

10. it was really an earthshaking story.  
1 2

3

total: 107

passing: 75

II. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

1. 当敌人对解放区  
 进行扫荡的时候，  
 因为环境很艰难，  
 有的人动摇了，向  
 敌人投降了，成了  
 革命的叛徒。但是  
 革命的同志为了革  
 命事业，坚持斗争，  
 有些同志英勇牺  
 牲了，其他同志继  
 续斗争，许多人在  
 最光荣的艰苦环境  
 里参加了中国共产  
 党。

1.

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

2. 战争的时候，留  
 在家的八路军都  
 积极地参加到

2.

---



---



---

去。力量虽然扫不环得他们路  
里有做虽来都的炼他八  
争所跟人攻，他们争锻炼的  
斗集中粮敌进他战他们坚强的  
的集军时来是在他越光属。  
热们送常常可摇。里，来是家  
火他量鞋。常荡，动境越真军

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

3. 八刀问降。答：人铡战站着。那  
几个铡前，投回敌备个地喊岁！  
几把面不地降。准几胸声万  
着士，他们降定投法，那挺大民  
绑战他投坚不办他们。首里，人  
人军在们他们也有他昂那国  
敌路放他他死没死士在“中

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

声音，手战  
声了个了。  
的慌几牲  
地人这牺  
动敌后，勇  
天得最英  
惊吓脚。士

4. 的中来礼从会我义了献。如何不众，行。  
县集队有把堂。扬主做贡白，任办群都  
各都产没好礼赞会中的明众，都了情都  
省表生为只当都社业地的全群们有事  
全代们因以庙家在事动完有我要么  
天，民我会。所的大队建设天们没情只什  
4. 昨农到开堂前上们建惊我果事到办

5. 家出  
我因为  
进攻，因  
军时候，  
匪的  
5. 当乡

替王恶准八省供这可一匪当匪为娘  
把的军对是跟都把我头把我到奇大  
人事匪枪谁谁系她下把地要不惊老强  
敌办了。用把属，联要写娘定去：办很个坚  
徒，会抓地她家会还笔大坚回吗？到这么  
叛女娘，要军女来；亲王很顶徒感么这  
了，妇大狠她，路妇出些是扬，军叛军什会

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

我钟说话今到  
问闹我连了。冲  
李的，吗？得走李  
老你行气就老  
天把我，他说上  
几张，给行，没早  
前小借不都天

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

子你行，把呢？  
 桌向不应林  
 着我，说答小  
 拍张，你你给  
 前“小钟，么借  
 面喊“闹什钟  
 我大借为闹

7. 刘生的毛写的敌人要产给是去银徒桌刘  
 胡命事的主了伟人她党她“就山！故子胡  
 兰献业。时候席八大，答把员一把是我人兰  
 把给她才亲个死应家供份敌给也气叫，铡  
 年了牺十笔大的过乡出土人我不得拍后  
 轻人牲五给她“生荣”。只共就可回座叛着把  
 的民的岁。她  
 7.

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.



BY - Model Translations:

Paragraph 1:

When / the enemy / conducted / a mopping-up operation / in a liberated area, /  
2 1 1 2 1  
because / the circumstances / were very / difficult, / some people /  
1 2 1 2 1  
wavered, / surrendered / to / the enemy, / and became / traitors /  
2 1 1 1 1 2  
to the revolution. / But / many comrades / persisted / in the struggle /  
1 1 1 1 2  
for / the revolutionary / cause. / Some / comrades / heroically /  
1 1 2 1 1 2  
sacrificed (themselves), / and other / comrades / continued / to struggle. /  
2 1 1 1 2  
Many people, / even / in the most / trying / circumstances, / gloriously /  
1 1 1 2 2 2  
joined / the Chinese / Communist Party. / (39/55)  
1 1 1

Paragraph 2:

During the war, / dependents / of the Eighth Route Army (soldiers) /  
1 2 1  
who stayed / in the rear, / all / actively / joined / in the heated /  
1 2 1 1 1 2  
struggle. / They / concentrated / all of their / strength / to deliver /  
2 1 2 1 2 1  
military foodstuffs / and / military footgear. / At that time , / although /  
1 1 1 2 1  
the enemy / often / came / to attack, / (and) came / to mop up, / they all, /  
1 1 1 2 1 2 1  
however, / did not waver, / and in the environment / of the struggle, /  
1 2 2 2  
they / were tempered / till they became / more and more / staunch. /  
1 1 1 1 2  
They really were / glorious / Eighth Route Army / dependents. / (38/54)  
1 2 1 2

Paragraph 2:

The enemy / tied up / several / Eighth Route Army / soldiers, / placed /  
1 2 1 1 1 1  
a chopper / in front / of them, / and asked / them /  
2 1 1 1 1  
(if they would) surrender / or not surrender. / They / staunchly / replied, /  
2 2 1 2 1

(even if we) die, / (we) still / won't surrender!" / The enemy /  
had no way out, / (and so) prepared / to chop / them / to death. /  
Those several / soldiers / stood / there / with their heads up /  
and their chests thrust out / and loudly / shouted, / "Long live /  
the Chinese / people!" / That / earthshaking / sound / scared / the enemy /  
till they were frantic. / Finally, / these several / soldiers /  
were heroically / sacrificed. / (42/60)

Paragraph 4:

Yesterday, / all / the peasant / representatives / of each county /  
of the entire province / came / and assembled / at our / production team /  
to attend a meeting. / Because / there was no / auditorium, / therefore /  
all they could do was (have a) / former / temple / serve as /  
an auditorium. / At the meeting / everybody / praised / the earthshaking /  
contributions / made / by our team / in / the cause / of socialist /  
(re)construction. / We understood / completely / that without / the masses /  
we could not do / anything. / As long as we have / the masses, /  
anything can be done / all right! / (34/48)

Paragraph 5:

When / the bandit troops / attacked / my native place, / because /  
there was / a traitor, / the enemy / seized / Mrs. Wang, / who was working /  
for / the Women's Association. / The bandit troops / ferociously /  
aimed at her / with guns / and wanted her / to confess / who were /  
the Eighth Route Army / dependents / and who / was in contact / with /

the Provincial / Women's Association. / (They) further / wanted her /  
to write this down / in her own handwriting, / but / Mrs. Wang /  
lifted her head / and very / staunchly / rebuffed /  
the bandit troops (saying), / "You want me / to be / a traitor? /  
Impossible!" / The bandit troops / felt / this was very / astonishing. /  
How (why) could / this granny / be so / staunch! / (54/76)

Paragraph 6:

Several days ago, / Old Li / asked me, / "Little Zhang, / lend me / your /  
alarm clock, / all right?" / I said, / "No." (it's not all right) /  
He / became so angry / he couldn't even talk / and walked away. /  
This morning / Old Li / rushed up / before me, / slapped / the table, /  
and shouted, / "Little Zhang, / I (wanted to) / borrow /  
the alarm clock / and you said no. / Why / did you / consent to /  
lend / the alarm clock / to / Little Lin?" / (28/39)

Paragraph 7:

Liu Hulan / gave / her young life / for / the people's / cause. /  
At the time when / she / sacrificed (herself) / she was only / 15 years old, /  
(and) Chairman Mao / wrote / eight large characters / for her /  
in his own handwriting: / "A great life, / a glorious death." / The enemy /  
had promised / her / that if only she would / confess /  
(who were) Communist Party members / in her hometown, /  
(They would) give her / some land. / But / she / rebuffed /  
the enemy, (saying) / "Even if you / gave me / a mountain of silver, / I still /

wouldn't be / a traitor." / The enemy / was so angry, / that he slapped /  
1 2 1 1 2  
the table / and shouted, / and finally / they chopped / Liu Hulan. / (44/62)  
1 2 1 2 2

## 第八课 丝绸之路

中国的丝绸生产已经有好几千年的历史了。在有文字记载以前，中国就开始养蚕抽丝。三千多年以前，中国的丝绸生产技术发展到了比较高的水平，已经能织很漂亮的带花的丝绸了。

两千多年以前，中国出产的丝绸就不断运往国外。公元前一三八年到一一五年，中国汉朝的张骞开辟了从中国西北通往巴基斯坦、阿富汗、伊朗等国的道路。中国古代的丝绸，主要就是通过这条路运往伊朗和地中海东部的国家，然后转运到欧洲的。这条道路后来就被称为“丝绸之路”。西亚、欧洲一些国家的特产也通过这条道路运到中国。

“丝绸之路”把东方跟西亚、欧洲联系起来，成了东西方的交通要道，促进了东西方的文化交流、通商贸易和友好往来。

近年来，中国和一些友好国家共同决定重新开放“丝绸之路”。这对发展中国人民和各国人民之间的友谊，一定会作出新的贡献。

生词 New words

1. 丝 (名) sī silk
2. 绸(子) (名) chóu (zi) silk fabrics (thin and fine)
3. 文字 (名) wénzì letters and characters (“文字记载” means “written record”)
4. 记载 (动、名) jìzài to record, record
5. 养 (动) yǎng to breed, 'to feed
6. 蚕 (名) cán silkworm
7. 抽 (动) chōu to reel (silk thread off cocoons)
8. 技术 (名) jìshù technique
9. 织 (动) zhī to weave
10. 漂亮 (形) piàoliáng beautiful, smart
11. 带 (动) dài with
12. 花 (名) huā flower pattern, flower, blossom
13. 出产 (动) chūchǎn to produce
14. 往 (动) wǎng to go, towards

15. 公元 (名) gōngyuán A.D. (“公元前” means B.C.)
16. 开辟 (动) kāipi to open up
17. 通过 (动) tōng to pass, to go through
18. 等 (代) děng and so forth, etc.
19. 古代 (名) gǔdài ancient times
20. 主要 (形) zhǔyào main, chief
21. 东部 (名) dōngbù eastern part
22. 然后 (副) ránhòu then
23. 转运 (动) zhuǎnyùn to transfer
24. 称为 (动) chēngwéi known as, referred to as
25. 特产 (名) tèchǎn local product
26. 东方 (名) dōngfāng the east
27. 交通 (名) jiāotōng communication
28. 要道 (名) yàodào main road
29. 促进 (动) cùjìn to promote, to stimulate
30. 文化 (名) wénhuà culture
31. 通商 (动) tōng shāng to trade, trade
32. 贸易 (名) mào yì trade, commerce
33. 友好 (形) yǒu hǎo friendly
34. 往来 (动) wǎng lái (cultural etc.) exchange
35. 近年 (动) jìn nián recent years

“等” is a pronoun showing that the enumeration of persons, places or things is complete, but it can also be used when the enumeration is not complete. E.g.

- (1) 参加今天座谈会的有史文、阿里等八个人。
- (2) 我们这次到中国，访问了北京、上海、南京等三个城市。
- (3) 北京、上海等地解放后修建了许多工厂。

如果表示列举未尽，也常说“等等”。例如：

If it indicates that the list of persons or things enumerated is incomplete, “等等” may also be used. E.g.

- (4) 我们学过好几个寓言，有《愚公移山》、《黔之驴》等等。

## 2. 主要

- (1) 我已经掌握了这节课课文的主要内容。
- (2) 昨天的座谈会主要讨论了学习方面的问题。

## 3. 然后

- (1) 星期日我先去书店买书，然后再去邮局订报。
- (2) 小八路军对鬼子说：“这是我爸爸、我哥哥、我妈妈，怎么不认得！”然后就把区长他们领走了。

36. 共同 (形) gòngtóng common, joint
37. 重新 (副) chóngxīn again, re-
38. 开放 (动) kāifàng to open
39. ……之间 ……zhījiān between, among

## 专名 Proper names

- |         |            |   |
|---------|------------|---|
| 1. 汉朝   | Hàncháo    | Han Dynasty   |
| 2. 张骞   | Zhāng Qiān | Chang Chien, sent as an envoy to countries in Central Asia in the Han Dynasty |
| 3. 巴基斯坦 | Bājīstǎn   | Pakistan  |
| 4. 阿富汗  | Āfūhàn     | Afghanistan   |
| 5. 伊朗   | Yīlǎng     | Iran  |
| 6. 地中海  | Dìzhōnghǎi | the Mediterranean Sea   |
| 7. 欧洲   | Ōuzhōu     | Europe  |
| 8. 西亚   | Xī Yà      | Western Asia  |

## 词语例解 Notes

1. 等 “等”是表示概括的代词，可以表示列举已尽，也可以表示列举未尽。例如：

#### 4. 近年来

“来”常放在表示时段的词语之后作状语，概括到现在为止的某一段时间。例如：

When a word or phrase denoting time takes “来” after it and forms an adverbial adjunct, it denotes an entire period from a certain point in the past up to the present. E.g.

- (1) 二十几年来，这个城市发生了很大的变化。
- (2) 三个月来，我们的中文水平有了很大的提高。
- (3) 近年来，我们两国之间的贸易不断发展。

#### 5. 重新

“重新”有“再”、“又”的意思，但有时还含有较前一次有所改进的意思。“重新”和“再”或“又”可以同时并用。“重新”常可省为“重”。例如：

“重新” means “再” or “又” but sometimes it implies a fresh effort at improvement. “重新” may be used together with “再” or “又”. “重新” may be simplified into “重” E.g.

- (1) 老师怕我们没听懂，又重新讲了一遍。
- (2) 这个句子作错了，重作一个吧。

下面这类句子说的是事物的增加，不能用“重新”：

In the following sentences stress is laid on the increase of persons or things. “重新” cannot be used in such cases:

- (1) 这本字典很好，我要再买一本给我弟弟。

- (2) 昨天上午我收到一封信，下午又收到一封。

#### 6. ……之间

- (1) 人民英雄纪念碑在历史博物馆和人民大会堂之间。
- (2) 我们两国人民之间的友谊一定会不断发展。
- (3) 同学之间要互相关心，互相帮助，共同提高。

### 练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组： Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 主要问题 主要内容 主要目的  
主要方法 主要方面
2. 促进文化交流 促进友好往来  
促进生产发展
3. 友好往来 友好国家 友好的谈话
4. 共同努力 共同讨论 共同提高  
共同研究 共同(的)目的  
共同(的)事业
5. 作出贡献 作出成绩 作出决定



二、选词填空: Fill the blanks:

1. 主要、重要

(1) 今天开会\_\_\_\_\_是请谢利介绍学习经验。

(2) 这个问题很\_\_\_\_\_, 必须发动大家进行认真讨论。

2. 友好、友谊

(1) 通过这次互相访问, 促进了两国人民之间的\_\_\_\_\_往来。

(2) 这次比赛, 加强了我们之间的\_\_\_\_\_。

三、完成句子: Complete the following sentences:

1. \_\_\_\_\_, 人民的生活水平不断提高。  
(发展)

2. 东郭先生把狼捆好, \_\_\_\_\_。(然后)

3. 他们想先坐飞机到上海, \_\_\_\_\_。  
(然后)

4. 我们两国代表团的互相访问, \_\_\_\_\_。  
(促进)

5. \_\_\_\_\_, 应该互相学习。(…之间)

四、用下列各组词语造句: Make sentences with the following groups of words and phrases:

1. 技术 漂亮 丝绸

2. 促进 文化 交流 …之间

3. 科学 研究 作出 贡献

五、把下列句子译成中文, 用上括号里的词语: Translate the following into Chinese, using the words and phrases in the brackets:

1. With the help of the veteran worker, he mastered the production technique very soon. (在…下)

2. The chemical industry of this city has greatly developed in recent years. (...来)

3. China is situated in the east of Asia. (位于)

4. In this struggle, they made great contribution to their motherland. (作出)

5. There have been trade relations between our two countries since long ago, and trade has further developed in recent years. (...之间)

## STUDY RESOURCES

I. Required Vocabulary.A. New Characters and Terms:

1. 称 chēng BF/LW: call, name, designate;  
say, state
- 称为 chēngwéi V: called, known as, referred to as
- a. 烧伤刚好的人, 他们身上的血, 称为“康复血”。  
Blood from the body of a person who has just recovered from burn wounds is called "Kang Fu" blood.
- b. 在故事里另外还有别的意思, 称为“寓言”。  
When a story has yet another meaning, it is called a fable.
2. 促 cù BF: urge, hurry
- 促进 cùjìn V: promote (movement, idea, etc.),  
urge to proceed, stimulate
- a. 促进工业发展, 可以提高人民生活水平。  
Promoting industrial development can raise the people's standard of living.
- b. 留学生可以促进两国的友谊。  
Students studying abroad can promote friendship between two countries.
3. 花 huā N: flower, blossom (M: 朵 duǒ or 棵)
- a. 这块黑布上的红花和黄花非常好看。  
The red and yellow flowers on this piece of black cloth are extraordinarily beautiful.
- b. 外国代表团到中国去访问的时候, 总有小孩子献花。  
When foreign delegations go to China for a visit, there always are children who present flowers.
4. 技 jì BF: skill, ability  
(see item #8)

5. 贸易  
 mào BF: trade, barter  
 mào yì N/V: commerce; trade
- a. 中国在两千年以前就开始和欧洲(Ōuzhōu)国家贸易了。  
 China began commerce with European nations two thousand years ago. (Ōuzhōu - see Additional Vocabulary, item #7)
- b. 贸易可以促进生产。  
 Commerce can promote production.
- c. 贸易的意思是买外国的东西,外国也买我国的东西。  
 Commerce means buying foreign goods and foreign countries also buying our goods.
6. 开辟  
 pì BF: open up, break a path, develop  
 kāi pì V: open up (new land, path, etc.)
- a. 希望有一天能在海底开辟一条道路到中国去。  
 I hope that one day they will be able to open up a road beneath the sea to China.
- b. 道路的开辟对国家的建设有很大的影响。  
 The opening up of roads has a very great influence on the construction of a nation.
7. 漂亮  
 piào BF: pretty, nice  
 piào liang SV: beautiful, handsome, smart-looking
- a. 王同志的爱人漂亮极了。  
 Comrade Wang's spouse is extremely smart-looking.
- b. 这些漂亮的汉字是谁写的?  
 Who wrote these beautiful Chinese characters?
8. 技术  
 shù BF: a skill, an art  
 jì shù N: technique, technical skill
- a. 日本的汽车生产技术已经发展到了世界的水平了。  
 Japan's automobile production techniques have already developed to world standards.

- b. 七,八十年以前,中国开始派学生到欧洲(Oūzhōu)去学习科学技术。  
70-80 years ago, Chinese began sending students to Europe to learn scientific techniques.
- c. 没有任何技术的人,能为国家服务吗?  
Can people without any technical skill serve the country?

## 9. 丝

sī

N: silk; (raw) silks in general

- a. 丝做的衣服穿着很舒服。  
Clothes made of silk are very comfortable to wear.
- b. 中国丝和日本丝在世界上都很有名。  
Chinese and Japanese silks are both world famous.

## 10. 养

yǎng

V: raise, rear, feed, care for, nurture

- a. 把小老虎养在家里是很危险的。  
Raising a small tiger in one's home is very dangerous.
- b. 这头牛是我们把它从小养大的。  
This ox was reared by us from its infancy.
- c. 爸爸妈妈老了的时候,孩子应该养他们吗?  
When parents grow old, should children care for them?

## 11. 元

yuán

BF: the beginning, the first

## 公元

gōngyuán

N: A.D.

## 公元前

gōngyuánqián

N: B.C.

- a. 公元一九二六年到一九三二年,有人在北京附近挖出了三十万年前到五十年前在那里住的人。  
From 1926 to 1932 A.D., in the vicinity of Beijing, some people dug up a person who had lived there 300,000 to 500,000 years before.
- b. 汉朝(Hàn Cháo)是从公元前二〇二年开始的。  
The Han Dynasty began in 202 B.C.

12. **载** zǎi BF: record, write down  
**记** jìzǎi V/N: record, put in writing; record
- a. 公元前三千年以前的中国历史,  
当时没有记载下来。  
China's history prior to 3000 B.C. was not recorded at that time.
- b. 没有纸以前,把事情记载在哪里?  
Where were events recorded before there was paper?
- c. 历史书上的记载并不完全。  
Records in history books are really not complete.

13. **织** zhī V: weave, knit
- a. 中国农民用很简单的机器织布。  
Chinese peasants used very simple machines to weave cloth.
- b. 布上的花,有的是织上去的,有的不是。  
Some of the flowers on cloth are woven in, some aren't.
- c. 工厂里织布比农民织得又快又好。  
Factories weave cloth faster and better than the peasants.

B. Familiar Characters in New Tems:

14. **重新** chóngxīn A: again, re-, anew  
(see CR L.8, note #5)
- a. 如果有人不明白,我可以重新讲一次。  
If someone doesn't understand, I can explain it again.
- b. 老师说我的句子不行,我只好又重(新)作了。  
The teacher said that the sentences I did won't do. The only thing I could do was redo them.
- c. 我想重写这课的练习,但是他说他没有时间重看了。  
I want to rewrite this lesson's exercises, but he said he has no time to re-read them.

15. 抽 chōu V: draw, pull out, reel  
抽丝 chōusī VO: reel or draw silk (threads from the cocoon)
- a. 中国人在几千年以前就会抽丝了。  
The Chinese knew how to draw silk several thousand years ago.
- b. 一根一根的丝是从什么东西抽出来的?  
What are silk threads drawn from?

16. 出产 chūchǎn V/N: produce; products
- a. 这个工厂出产的东西非常好。  
Things produced by this factory are extraordinarily good.
- b. 今年丰产田出产的粮食特别多。  
This year, grain production from the high-yield fields is especially abundant.
- c. 这种菜只有在热的地方才出产。  
This kind of vegetable can only be produced in hot places.

17. 带 dài CV: with
- a. 我住的房子带床和一些别的东西。  
The house I live in (comes) with a bed and a few other things.
- b. 那些英勇的战士带着伤进攻敌人的据点。  
Those heroic soldiers with wounds attacked the enemy's fortified point.
- c. 她用带花的信纸给她爱人写信。  
She used stationery (printed) with flowers to write a letter to her spouse.

18. 等(等) děng(děng) Ph: etc., and so forth, and such (see CR L.8, note #1)
- a. 明天我和史文, 阿里等一起去参观工业展览会。  
Tomorrow I'm going together with Shiwen, Ali, etc., to visit the industrial exhibition.
- b. 上海, 南京, 北京等地方都是中国重要的城市。  
Shanghai, Nanjing, Beijing and such places are all important cities of China.

- c. 他会说好几种外国话,象英文,日文等等.

He can speak several foreign languages, like English, Japanese, and so forth.

### 19. 东部

dōngbù

PW: eastern part

- a. 上海,南京位于中国的东部.日本位于中国的东边.

Shanghai and Nanjing are situated in the eastern part of China. Japan is situated to the east of China.

- b. 这里的天气比东部好得多.

The weather here is much better than the eastern part (of the country).

- c. 下月我要去东部开会.

Next month I'm going to the East(ern) part (of the U.S.) to attend a meeting.

### 20. 东方

dōngfāng

PW/Att: the East, Orient; oriental

- a. 中国,日本等国都是东方国家.中国人,日本人都是东方人.

China, Japan and such countries are all oriental countries. Chinese and Japanese are all orientals.

- b. 太阳每天都从东方升起来.

Everyday the sun rises from the east.

- c. 我刚从东方来,对西方的生活很不习惯.

I just came from the Orient, and am not accustomed to western living.

### 21. 共同

gòngtóng

SV/A: joint, common; jointly, commonly

- a. 我们应该团结起来,共同打敌人.

We should unite and jointly fight the enemy.

- b. 解放中国是中国人民的共同(的)目的吗?

Is the Liberation of China a common goal of the Chinese people?

- c. 我和小张等五个人共同研究这次灾难的原因.

I and Little Zhang, etc., (a total of) five persons are jointly studying the causes of this disaster.

## 22. 古代 gǔdài

TW: ancient times, ancient

- a. 现在有不少人研究古代历史。  
At present there are many people studying ancient history.
- b. 从这几张画儿,可以知道一些古代人民的生活。  
From these pictures we can know something about the livelihood of people in ancient times.
- c. 地下挖出来的东西,对研究古代历史有很大贡献。  
Things dug up from the earth are a great contribution toward the study of ancient history.

## 23. 近年 jìn nián

TW: recent years, past years  
(see CR L.8, note #4)

- a. 近年来中国人民的生活水平不断地提高了。  
In recent years the standard of living of the Chinese people has been rising incessantly.
- b. 近两年来,我们学校有了很大的变化。  
In the past two years there have been great changes at our school.
- c. 近几十年来,美国科学发展得快极了。  
In the past several decades American science has developed extremely rapidly.

## 24. 开放 kāifàng

V: open to the public (park, garden, etc.); open (to traffic, trade, etc.)

- a. 我们学校每年开放一次,有各种表演和展览。请(学)校外(边)的人来参观。  
Our school is opened to the public once each year. There are various kinds of performances and exhibitions, (and) people from outside the school are invited to come and visit.
- b. 这条道路快要修建好了。大概下月可以开放。  
This road will soon be built. They can probably open it next month.



25. 特产 tèchǎn N: special or unique product (of a location), local product (contr. of "特别产品")
- a. 丝是中国主要特产之一。  
Silk is one of China's principal special products.
- b. 我们到一个地方去玩的时候,都喜欢买点那地方的特产。  
When we go somewhere to have a good time, we all like to buy some unique product of that area.
26. 通 tōng V: lead to (someplace); connect with  
通过 tōngguò V: pass through; pass (a bill, resolution)  
CV: go by way of, by, via, through
- a. 从中国西北通到外国的道路是公元前一百多年开辟的。  
The road leading to foreign countries from China's Northwest was opened more than 100 years B.C.
- b. 火车不常通过城市中心。  
Trains don't often go through city centers.
- c. 加拿大产品也通过这条道路运到美国。  
Canadian products are also shipped to the U.S. via this route.
27. 通商 tōngshāng VO/N: trade
- a. "丝绸之路" (Sīzhōu Zhī Lù) 开辟了以后,促进了东西方的通商贸易。  
After "The Silk Route" was opened, it promoted trade and commerce between the East and the West. (Sīzhōu Zhī Lù -- see Additional Vocabulary, item #2)
- b. 和中华人民共和国通商的国家,渐渐地多了。  
Gradually, more countries are trading with the PRC.
28. 通往 tōngwǎng V: lead to  
这条道路通往加拿大。  
This road leads to Canada.
29. 往来 wǎnglái N: exchange, interchange (cultural, etc.) (lit. goings and comings)
- a. 中国和美国的贸易往来是从什么时候开始的?  
When did trade exchange between China and the U.S. begin?

## b. 贸易可以促进两国的文化往来吗?

Can trade promote cultural interchange between two nations?

30. 文字 wénzì N: written language, writing

文字记载 wénzì jìzǎi N: written records

## a. 中国古代的文字和现在的文字完全不一样。

The ancient Chinese written language is completely different from that of today.

## b. 中国有五千年的历史,但是有文字记载的只有四千多年。

China has 5,000 years of history, but only has 4000-plus years of written records.

## c. 中国的文字称为汉字。

The written language of China is called "Chinese characters." (Han characters)

31. 要道 yàodào N: main road or route, important road or route

## a. 老师指着地图说:"这条交通要道开辟了以后,促进了东西方的文化交流。"

Pointing at the map, the teacher said, "After this main route of communication was opened, it promoted cultural exchange between the East and the West."

## b. 那是中国古代从北京通往西北的要道。

That is an important route that led to the Northwest from Beijing in ancient China.

32. 友好 yǒuhǎo SV/N: friendly; friendship, amity

## a. 通过这次互相访问,促进了中美两国人民的友好往来。

Through this mutual visit, friendly interchange between the Chinese and the American people has been promoted.

## b. 美国和加拿大、日本等都是友好国家。

The U.S., Canada, Japan, etc., are all friendly nations.

## c. 日本派代表团参加中国国庆,和毛主席进行了友好的谈话。

Japan sent a delegation to participate in China's National Day celebration, (and) they carried out friendly talks with Chairman Hua.

33. 运往 yùnwǎng V: ship to  
 美国常常把粮食和衣服运往有灾难  
 的国家。

The U.S. often ships foodstuffs and clothing to countries that have had catastrophes.

34. ...之间 ... zhījiān Patt: between; among, amidst  
 a. 近年来,中日两国之间的贸易不断地  
 发展。

In recent years trade between Japan and China has developed incessantly.

b. 同学之间应该互相帮助,共同提高。

Among classmates there should be mutual assistance and joint improvement.

c. 半年来,他们之间的感情越来越好了。

In the past half year feelings among them have gotten better and better.

35. 主要 zhǔyào Att: principal, main, chief, key, essential  
 a. 我们请谢利讲一讲这本书的主要内  
 容。

We'll ask Xieli to talk about the essential contents of this book.

b. 学生到这个学校来的主要目的是学  
 外国话。

The main goal of students coming to this school is to learn foreign languages.

c. 今天开会主要是讨论发展贸易的  
 问题。

At today's meeting, the principal (point) was discussion of the problem of development of commerce.

## 36. 转运

zhuǎnyùn

V: transfer, transship, forward, pass on

- a. 从前中国丝绸先运往地中海东部国家, 然后转运到欧洲(Ōuzhōu)的。

Formerly, China's silk was first shipped to Eastern Mediterranean countries and then transshipped (forwarded) to Europe.

- b. 很多产品都是先集中在大城市, 然后转运到其他地方去。

Many products are first concentrated in the big cities and then are transferred to other places.

II. Additional Vocabulary.

1. 蚕 cán N: silkworm  
 养蚕 yǎngcán N: sericulture (raising of silkworms for silk production)
- a. 很多小孩都喜欢养蚕。你养过吗?  
 Very many children enjoy sericulture. Have you ever raised silkworms?
- b. 蚕的生命不长,但是变化却很大。  
 The life of the silkworm is short, but the changes (in their lives) are very great.
2. 绸(子) chóu(zi) N: thin silk fabric  
 丝绸 sīchóu N: silk fabric (in general)  
 丝绸之路 "Sīchóu Zhī Lù" N: "The Silk Route"
- a. 夏天穿绸衣服既舒服又漂亮。  
 Wearing thin silk clothing in the summer is both comfortable and attractive.
- b. 近年来有了用科学方法制造的绸。  
 In recent years there has appeared silk made by scientific methods.
- c. 中国的丝绸和其他特产是通过“丝绸之路”运往西亚和欧洲的。  
 China's silk and other unique products were shipped to Western Asia and Europe via "The Silk Route."

Proper Names:

3. 阿富汗 Āfùhàn PW: Afghanistan
4. 巴基斯坦 Bājīstān PW: Pakistan
5. 地中海 Dìzhōnghǎi PW: the Mediterranean Sea
6. 汉朝 Hàrcháo N: Han Dynasty (206 B.C. to 220 A.D.)
7. 欧洲 Ōuzhōu PW: Europe
8. 西亚 Xī Yà PW: Western Asia
9. 伊朗 Yīlǎng PW: Iran
10. 张骞 Zhāng Qiān N: (personal name -- sent as an envoy to countries in Central Asia during the Han Dynasty)

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

I. Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passages and answer the questions that follow concerning the content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passages as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

近年来,在中国西北部,中国人民重新修建,开放了一条古代的交通要道。从这条要道可以通往巴基斯坦去。  
(Bājīsitǎn)

这条要道已经有几千年的历史了,它在中国古代和西亚(xī yà)的联系中,它是一条主要道路。同时,它在促进中国和外国之间文化交流上,在促进中国和外国之间贸易和友好往来上,以后一定会有更大的好处和影响。

我们都知道了,公元前两千多年以前,中国已经有了特产丝绸。汉朝,这条古代中国要道通往西亚,然后转运到欧洲各地。  
(Hàncháo)  
(Ōuzhōu)

中国初期的养蚕,织丝绸和别的技术等也是经过这条丝绸之路介绍到国外去的。

今天很多国家能出产丝绸就是因为开辟了这条丝绸之路的结果。

1. When did the rebuilding of an historical road in the Northwest of China take place?
2. What did they do to the road after rebuilding it?
3. What was the significance of the road?
4. Where did the road go?
5. What advantages and effects will this road have in the future?
6. When did silk production begin in China?
7. When did China begin exporting silk?
8. Where was silk shipped first? Then what happened to it?





Answer Key:

	<u>Score</u>
1. <u>in recent years</u> 2	2
2. <u>opened it</u> 2	2
3. <u>main route of communication</u> between <u>Ancient China</u> and <u>Western Asia</u> 2 1 2 1 2	8
4. <u>to Pakistan</u> 2	2
5. <u>promote cultural exchange</u> between <u>China</u> and <u>foreign countries</u> ; 2 1 2 2 1 1 <u>promote joint friendship</u> and <u>commercial interchange</u> between <u>China</u> 2 2 1 2 2 2 1 and <u>foreign countries</u> 2	23
6. <u>more than 2000 years B.C.</u> 1 1 2	4
7. during the <u>Han Dynasty</u> 2	2
8. to <u>Western Asia</u> ; <u>transshipped everywhere</u> in <u>Europe</u> 2 2 1 2	7
9. <u>sericulture, weaving of silk</u> and <u>other techniques</u> 2 2 2 1 2	9
10. the <u>opening</u> of " <u>The Silk Route</u> " 2 2	4

---

Total: 63

Passing: 45

II. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

1. 近年来, 为了促进  
东、西方国家之间  
的友好往来, 东方  
国家和西方国家  
都经常派贸易代  
表团、文化代表团  
和各种代表团互  
相访问。这种友好  
往来, 增进了各国  
之间的互相了解。

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. 最早出产丝绸的  
国家是记载以前, 中  
国就已经开始养  
蚕抽丝, 出产的丝  
绸是全世界最好的。

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

他们带的各种花，  
 还的漂亮，  
 最漂亮的。他们带的各种花，  
 还能织各种漂亮的丝绢。

3. 在古代，因为交通不便，又没有联系，  
 在古方便，又互相困难。但是，现在，  
 在不字，都有交通人由文可字。英文，  
 都在各以有民习学学样。英文，就  
 以有民习学学样。英文，就

4. 我们可以住在可是，  
 有看习不以文书，科同写信。我们可技术，  
 有看习不以文书，科同写信。我们可技术，

世界地方，  
在各地，  
知道什  
么？  
很多不  
知道呢！  
你知道吗？  
知道有还  
文“字”  
你上人们  
么叫“文”

---

---

---

---

---

5. 之通 往馆文 贸代是 的同  
国流 好使些 和些作 间共  
各交 友大一 商这工 之和  
进化和 的有通 等要国 解  
促文 易国都 代表主 各了  
了的 贸易各 面代代 的进相 展  
为间 商来， 里化易 表促互 发

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

6. 绸都 后因 便国  
丝西 然的 方两  
的东 本， 国不 美  
国等 日美 太中  
中产 过到 运过  
去特 通运 转经  
过和 是转 为了

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

努新径，绸运便，  
 同条途，丝等方，  
 共一易的产更，  
 的了贸国特就，  
 来辟商中他国了，  
 年开通此，其美快，  
 近力的从和往更。

7. 学晚晚了研的的一开通因这贸改  
 校上上一究通原百辟商为些易变  
 图都我本东商来，多了要交古要了。  
 书开从历方贸在年东道通代道  
 馆放那史和易公就西了。发的也  
 每天借是方题前经的天了，商全  
 每昨里书，西问元己方今展通完

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.

KEY - Model Translations:Paragraph 1:

In recent years, / in order to / promote / friendly / interchange / among /  
 2 1 2 2 2 2  
Eastern / and Western / nations, / Eastern / and Western / nations / all /  
 2 2 1 2 2 1 1  
frequently / send / trade / delegations, / cultural / delegations / and /  
 1 1 2 1 1 1 1  
different kinds / of delegations / to visit / each other. / This kind of /  
 1 1 1 1 1  
friendly / interchange / promotes / mutual / understanding / between /  
 1 2 2 1 1 2  
each nation. / (32/45)  
 1

Paragraph 2:

The earliest / silk / producing / country / was China. / Before /  
 1 2 1 1 1 1  
there were / written records, / China / had already / begun / sericulture, /  
 1 2 1 1 1 2  
drawing of silk / and the production / of silk. / The silk / produced /  
 2 1 2 2 1  
by China / was the best / and most / beautiful / in the entire world. /  
 1 1 1 2 1  
They / even / were able to / weave / silks / with / all kinds of /  
 1 1 1 2 2 2 1  
flowers. / (29/41)  
 2

Paragraph 3:

In / ancient times, / because / transportation / was inconvenient /  
 1 2 1 1 1  
and there also / was no / written language, / there were / difficulties /  
 1 1 2 1 1  
for people / to contact / each other. / But now / communications / are more /  
 1 2 1 1 1 1  
convenient, / and among / people / of all nations / there can be / free /  
 1 2 1 1 1 2  
interchange. / Moreover, / there are / written languages, / (and) people /  
 2 1 1 2 1  
of all nations / can / mutually / study / (these) written languages. /  
 1 1 1 1 2  
An example of this is / the Chinese people / studying / English /  
 2 1 1 1  
and Americans / studying / Chinese. / (34/48)  
 1 1 1

Paragraph 4:

(Because) there are / written languages / we can / read books /  
and newspapers, / and can / study / scientific / techniques. / People /  
living in / different / places / can / write letters /  
to (maintain) contact. / But / do you know? / There are / still /  
very many / places / in the world / (where) people / still / don't know /  
what a / "written language" is! (what it is that is called a "written  
language") / (23/32)

Paragraph 5:

In order to / promote / cultural / exchange, / trade, / commerce / and /  
friendly / interchange / among / all nations, / in / the embassies /  
of all countries / there are / some / cultural / representatives, / trade /  
and / commercial / representatives, / etc. / The principal / work /  
of these / representatives / is to promote / mutual / understanding / and /  
joint / development / between / all countries. / (33/47)

Paragraph 6:

In the past, / China's / silks, / unique products / and such / things /  
all / passed through / Japan / and then / were forwarded / to the U.S. /  
Because / transferring / was too inconvenient, / a new / route /  
for trade / and commerce / was opened / through / the joint / efforts /  
of the U.S. / and China / in recent years. / Henceforth, / shipping /  
China's / silk / and / other / unique products, / etc., / to America /  
will be / more convenient / and faster. / (38/54)

Paragraph 7:

The school / library / is open / every evening. / Last evening /  
           1          1          2          1          1  
I borrowed / a history / book / from there. / It was / a study / of trade /  
           1          1          1          1          1          1          2  
and commerce / problems / of the East / and the West. / Originally, /  
           2          1          2          2          1  
the main route / for East-West / trade / and commerce / was / already /  
           2          2          2          2          1          1  
opened / more than 100 years / B.C. / Today, / because / transportation /  
           2          1          2          1          1          1  
has developed, / these / ancient / main routes / of trade / and commerce /  
           1          1          2          2          2          2  
have also / completely / changed. / (39/55)  
           1          1          1



的。但是社员们豪迈地说：“愚公一家有决心搬走两座大山，我们一百多户，就不能搬走这座小山吗？”他们回忆了解放前遭受的压迫和剥削，畅谈了解放后的幸福生活，大家的干劲更大了。一九六七年，全队男女老少苦干了一冬，终于把乱石山变成了新茶园。现在龙井的茶园面积比刚解放时增加了一倍，每亩产量提高了四倍多。

过去加工茶叶，都是靠人工。由于生产不断发展，收入年年增加，龙井大队建起了炒茶厂，加工茶叶基本上实现了机械化。过去一百人干的活，现在十个人就够了。茶叶质量也不断提高，炒出来的茶，叶绿味香。这就是畅销国内外的名茶——“龙井”。

## 第九课 茶乡新貌

在风景优美的杭州西湖附近，有一个山村，这就是著名的龙井茶产地——西湖公社龙井生产大队。这里种茶已经有一千多年的历史了。

站在龙井大队的一个山顶上，向下一看，就会发现一个小水库。这是社员们用三个月时间修建起来的。过去到了夏天，天一旱，社员们就要从山下挑水上山，灌溉茶园。山高坡陡，一个人一天最多只能挑八担水。水库修好以后，把山上流下来的泉水储存起来，天旱也能保证丰收。

有了水，就可以扩大种植面积，社员们决定把附近的一座小荒山开辟成新茶园。要在哪里开辟茶园，必须把乱石搬走，还得从很远的地方挑来成千上万担好土。这样大的工程，对一个只有一百多户的大队来说是不够艰巨

### 生词 New words

- |       |           |                        |
|-------|-----------|------------------------|
| 1. 茶乡 | chá xiāng | tea-producing district |
| 2. 新貌 | xīn mào   | new look               |
| 3. 风景 | fēngjǐng  | scenery                |
| 4. 优美 | yōuměi    | excellent              |

- |          |                    |                                      |            |               |  |
|----------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|------------|---------------|--|
| 5. 著名    | (形) zhùmíng        | famous, well-known                   | 24. 工程     | (名) gōngchéng | construction project   |
| 6. 产地    | (名) chǎndì         | place famous for a certain produce   | 25. 对...来说 | duì...láishuō | for  |
| 7. 生产大队  | shēngchǎn dàduì    | production brigade                   | 26. 户      | (量) hù        | household, a measure word  |
| 8. 山顶    | (名) shāndǐng       | top of a mountain                    | 27. 艰巨     | (形) jiānjù    | formidable, arduous  |
| 9. 旱     | (形) hàn            | drought                              | 28. 豪迈     | (形) háomài    | magnificent, in a magnificent spirit                             |
| 10. 挑    | (动) tiāo           | to carry on the shoulder with a pole | 29. 回忆     | (动) huíyì     | to recollect, to recall  |
| 11. 茶园   | chá yuán           | tea plantation                       | 30. 遭受     | (动) zāoshòu   | to suffer, to undergo  |
| 12. 坡    | (名) pō             | slope                                | 31. 畅谈     | chàng tán     | to talk freely and contentedly, to talk to one's heart's content |
| 13. 陡    | (形) dǒu            | steep                                | 32. 干劲     | (名) gànjìn    | vigour, drive  |
| 14. 担    | (量) dàn            | two bucketfuls (carried with a pole) | 33. 老      | (形) lǎo       | old  |
| 15. 泉水   | (名) quánshuǐ       | spring water                         | 34. 少      | (形) shǎo      | young  |
| 16. 储存   | (动) chǔcún         | to store up, to put away             | 35. 增加     | (动) zēngjiā   | to increase  |
| 17. 保证   | (动) bǎozhèng       | to guarantee, to ensure              | 36. 亩      | (量) mǔ        | measure of land, equal to 15 hectares                            |
| 18. 丰收   | (动) fēngshōu       | bumper harvest                       | 37. 产量     | (名) chǎnliàng | yield, output  |
| 19. 扩大   | (动) kuòdà          | to enlarge, to expand                | 38. 加工     | (动) jiāgōng   | to process   |
| 20. 种植   | (动) zhòngzhí       | to plant                             | 39. 茶叶     | (名) chá yè    | tea  |
| 21. 面积   | (名) miànjí         | area                                 | 40. 靠      | (动) kào       | to depend on   |
| 22. 荒    | (形) huāng          | wild, barren, uncultivated           | 41. 人工     | (名) réngōng   | man power  |
| 23. 成千上万 | chéngqiān-shàngwàn | hundreds and thousands               | 42. 由于     | (介) yóuyú     | owing to, as a result of   |

43. 收入	(名、动) shōurù	income, to have an income of
44. 炒	(动) chǎo	to fire (tea)
45. 基本	(形) jīběn	in the main, mainly, basically
46. 实现	(动) shíxiàn	to realize
47. 机械化	(动) jīxièhuà	to mechanize
48. 活	(名) huó	work
49. 质量	(名) zhìliàng	quality
50. 香	(形) xiāng	fragrant, aromatic
51. 畅销	chàngxiāo	to sell well

专名 Proper names

1. 杭州	Hángzhōu	Hangchow
2. 西湖	Xīhú	the West Lake
3. 龙井	Lóngjǐng	Lungching

词语例解 Notes

1. 保证  
 (1) 这些工作保证三天可以做完。  
 (2) 全国人民的团结，是取得革命胜利的基本保证。

2. 对...来说

- (1) 对一个运动员来说，比赛不是目的，最重要的是通过比赛增进友谊。
- (2) 对我们刚学中文的人来说，这种字典很合适。

3. 够

“够”用在形容词前，表示达到说话人认为很高的程度，后面常有“了”、“的”或“的了”。例如：

“够” before an adjective shows the high degree which something has reached from the speaker's point of view. It is often accompanied by “了”, “的”, “的” or “的了” at the end of the sentence.  
 E.g.

- (1) 今天的天气够热的了，你怎么还穿那么多？
- (2) 这里离他们学校真够远的，坐汽车得一个小时。

4. 靠

- (1) 他靠着窗户站着。
- (2) 这个村子三面靠山，村前是小河，风景非常优美。
- (3) 社员们靠集体的智慧和力量，使荒山变成新茶园。

5. 由于

用“由于”组成介词结构，说明原因。例如：

The prepositional construction formed by “由于” indicates the cause of something, some event. E.g.

- (1) 由于下雨,我们学校的运动会只好下星期再举行了。
- (2) 由于大家的努力,这个工厂只用了三个月的时间就建成了。

#### 6. 基本

“基本”常作定语和状语。作状语时可以说“基本上”。例如:  
“基本” is often used as an attributive or adverbial adjunct.  
As an adverbial adjunct, it can be replaced by “基本上”. E.g.

- (1) 他来了才一个月,但我们这里的基本情况他都了解了。
- (2) 他学了两年中文,能基本看懂中文报
- (3) 经过几个月的学习和实践,他已经基本上掌握了这种新技术。

#### 7. 机械化

某些名词、形容词等后面加“化”构成动词,表示向某一性质或状态转化。例如:“工业化”、“机械化”、“现代化”、“绿化”等。除“绿化”等少数动词外,不能带宾语。

Some nouns, adjectives, etc. may take “化” after them to form verbs, “化” meaning to bring or come into such a state, e. g. “工业化”, “机械化”, “现代化”, “绿化”, etc. With the exception of “绿化” and a few others, these verbs cannot take objects.

#### 8. 名茶

有些词或词组是由两个以上的词紧缩构成的。“名茶”是由“有名的”或“著名的”和“茶叶”紧缩构成的,上一课的“要道”是由“重要的”或“主要的”和“道路”紧缩构成的。同样,“互相帮助”在某种情况下可以紧缩为“互助”、“互帮”、“相助”等。

许多双音节词都是由古代汉语的单音节词发展来的,其中一部分单音节词现在仍然使用,特别是在书面语里。例如:

There are words and phrases which are the contracted forms of two or more words. Thus “名茶” is contracted from “有名的” or “著名的” and “茶叶”; “要道” in the last lesson is the contracted form of “重要的” or “主要的” and “道路”. Similarly, “互相帮助” in some cases may be contracted into “互助”, “互帮” or “相助”.

Many disyllabic words have developed from monosyllabic words in classical Chinese and some of the original monosyllabic words are still in common use, especially in the written language. E.g.

时——时候 前——以前 后——以后  
已——已经 因——因为 并——并且  
或——或者 虽——虽然 但——但是  
除……外——除了……以外

#### 练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组: Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 著名产地 著名作品 著名建筑  
著名风景区

2. 保证丰收 保证质量 坚决保证  
作出保证
3. 扩大建筑面积 扩大生产 扩大影响  
扩大贸易往来 扩大了两倍
4. 基本条件 基本经验 基本情况  
基本实现 基本掌握

二、选词填空: Fill the blanks:

抬、挑、搬、推、拿

1. 雷锋\_\_\_\_\_着小车,在工地上飞跑。
2. 那本画报在书架上,你自己去\_\_\_\_\_吧。
3. 这块石头太重,一个人\_\_\_\_\_不动,需要两个人\_\_\_\_\_。
4. 这担水最多八十斤,我\_\_\_\_\_得动。

三、完成句子: Complete the following sentences:

1. 这个生产队不大,\_\_\_\_\_。(最多)
2. \_\_\_\_\_,产品质量不断提高。(由于)
3. 这个学校扩建以后,\_\_\_\_\_。(增加)
4. 今年的粮食取得了丰收,\_\_\_\_\_。(增加)
5. 如果修一个水库,这里的灌溉问题\_\_\_\_\_。(基本)

6. 通过一段时间的了解,我们对这里的情况\_\_\_\_\_。(基本)

四、造句: Make sentences with:

1. 保证
2. 靠
3. 由于
4. 基本

五、把下列句子译成中文: Translate the following into Chinese:

1. The West Lake is a well-known beauty-spot.
2. In order to expand the cultivated area, the commune members have built terraced fields on the barren hills.
3. This processing plant has been mechanized in the main.
4. All of us said in a magnificent spirit: "We will win even greater achievements to support the construction of our country."

STUDY RESOURCESI. Required Vocabulary.A. New Characters and Terms:

1. 保 bǎo V/BF: guarantee, insure, guard  
(see item #28)
2. 畅 chàng BF: with gusto, to one's heart's  
content; freely, smoothly
- 畅谈 chànghǎn V/N: talk to one's heart's content, talk  
freely, chat freely
- a. 昨天我遇见了小王,我请他到我家来  
吃晚饭,饭后又畅谈了半天。  
Yesterday I ran into Little Wang, and I invited him to my  
home for supper. After supper we chatted freely for a long  
time.
- b. 在宿舍里,和同学一边吃东西,一边  
畅谈,常常很晚才睡觉。  
In the dormitory my classmates and I talk to our heart's  
content while eating, and often it's very late before we go  
to sleep.
3. 程 chéng BF: schedule, formula; route, course
- 工程 gōngchéng N: construction work or project;  
task, job (figuratively)
- a. 建筑茶厂的工程已经进行一年了。  
The construction work of building the tea factory has already  
gone on for a year.
- b. 扩建天安门广场的工程真伟大。  
The construction project of expanding Tian An Men Square is  
really great.
4. 储 chǔ BF: save, store, store up  
(see item #5)
5. 存 cún V: leave for safekeeping, keep
- 储存 chǔcún V: store, store up, store away
- a. 水库是储存水的地方。  
A reservoir is a place for storing water.
- b. 听说我们现在吃的粮食都是七八  
年前储存起来的。  
I've heard that the grain we are now eating was all stored  
away seven or eight years ago.

6. 担 dàn N/M: two bucketfuls, load, burden  
(consisting of two units on either  
end of a pole, carried on the  
shoulder); a measure of weight  
(100 catties make one dàn)

a. 因为水不够, 每个人每天只可以用  
一担水。

Because there isn't enough water, each day each person can  
only use two bucketfuls.

b. 你知道一担水有多重吗? 大概是  
一百斤。

Do you know how heavy two bucketfuls of water are? About  
100 catties.

c. 农民把一担一担的粮食送进一间  
大房里储存起来。

Load by load the peasants deliver grain to a large building  
and store it away.

7. 陡 dǒu SV: steep  
(see item #17)

山很陡, 老人爬不上去。

The Mountain is very steep, and old people cannot climb (it).

8. 豪 háo BF: martial, heroic, extravagant,  
chivalrous  
(see item #15)

9. 户 hù M/BF: households (lit. a door)

a. 我们这个村子不大, 只有一百多户。

Our village is not large. There are only 100-some  
households.

b. 在中国, 每户的户长多半都是男的。

In Chinese households, most of the heads of households are  
male.

10. 荒 huāng Att: wild, barren, uncultivated  
荒地 huāngdì N: wasteland, barren land, wilderness  
荒山 huāngshān N: barren hill or mountain

a. 解放后, 中国积极地开辟荒地。

After Liberation, China has actively opened up wasteland.

b. 我们决心把附近的荒山开辟成梯田。

We are determined to open up the waste mountain land in the  
vicinity and turn it into terraced fields.

11. 基 jī  
基本 jīběn

BF: foundation, base, basis

Att/A: root, basic; fundamental, mainly,  
in the main, basically  
(see CR L.9, note #6)

- a. 如果我们能修(建)一个水库,我想灌溉问题就基本解决了。

If we can build the reservoir, I think the irrigation problem will be basically solved.

- b. 我们应该先了解基本情况,再开始工作。

We should first understand the basic situation and then begin working.

- c. 我学了一年英文,能基本看懂英文报了。

I have studied English for a year, and can basically understand an English newspaper.

12. 劲 jìn

N: vigor, energy, strength

干劲 gànjìn

N: drive, vigor

- a. 开始的时候,我们都有干劲,但是后来,干劲越来越小了。

At the start we all had vigor, but afterwards our drive grew less and less.

- b. 不吃饭就没劲劳动;不学毛泽东思想,就没有革命干劲。

Without eating, one won't have the energy to work; without studying Mao Zedong's thoughts, one won't have revolutionary drive.

13. 景 jǐng

BF: scenery, view

风景 fēngjǐng

N: scenery; scenic

- a. 西湖(Xīhú)是一个有名的风景区。

West Lake is a famous scenic area.

- b. 我最喜欢买风景照片。

I like most of all to buy scenic pictures.

14. 巨 jù

BF: big, huge, immense

艰巨 jiānjù

SV: formidable, arduous, difficult

- a. 把荒山开辟成风景区的工程很艰巨吗?

Was it a very formidable task to open up the waste mountain land and make it into a scenic area?



- b. 有的人工作越艰巨,越有干劲。  
For some people, the more difficult the work is, the more vigor they have.

15. 迈 mài BF: surpass or exceed, take big strides

豪迈 háomài SV: magnanimous, magnificent

- a. 那个工人豪迈地说:“既然我的血跟他的一样,就抽我的吧!”  
That worker said magnanimously, "Since my blood is the same as his, then draw mine."
- b. 王国福(Wáng Guófú)豪迈地说:“当干部就是为人民服务,多住几年破房没关系”。  
Wang Guofu said magnanimously, "Serving as a cadre involves (is) serving the people. Living a few more years in a dilapidated house does not matter!"

16. 亩 mǔ N/M: "mǔ" (a measure of land)  
(6.07 mǔ = 1 acre)

- a. 那个地主的土地真不少,大概有几十亩。  
That landlord's land is really large -- probably several tens of mu's.
- b. 丰产田每亩出产的粮食比其他的土地多。  
The grain produced from each mu of the high-yield fields is greater than for other land.

17. 坡 pō N: slope

山坡 shānpō N: slope

陡坡 dǒu pō N: steep slope

山高坡陡 shān gāo pō dǒu Ph: the mountain is high, the slope is steep

- a. 这个山坡又高又陡,旧汽车很难爬上来。  
This slope is both high and steep. It is very difficult for old cars to climb it.
- b. 我们的宿舍在陡坡上,可以看海边的风景。  
Our dormitory is on the (mountain) slope, (and we) can see the scenery of the seashore.
- c. 那个山坡陡得没办法上去。  
That mountain slope is so steep that there is no way to go up.

18. 泉 quán N: source, a spring  
 泉水 quánshuǐ N: spring water
- a. 这个地方的泉水又凉又好喝。  
 The spring water here is both cool and very good to drink (delectable).
- b. 住在山里的人都用从山上流下来的泉水。  
 People who live in the mountains use the spring water that flows down from the hills.
19. 入 rù BF: enter, receive, take in, income  
 收入 shōurù N: income
- a. 我们每个月的收入不多,才一百块钱。  
 Our monthly income isn't much. It is only one hundred dollars.
- b. 现在的收入应该是十年前的两倍,不然就不够用了。  
 Income should now be twice what it was ten years ago, otherwise it would be insufficient (to use).
20. 挑 tiāo V: shoulder, carry (on the shoulder with a pole)
- a. 这些东西太重了,我挑不动。  
 These things are too heavy. I can't carry them.
- b. 我哥哥的个子又高又大,所以挑水是他的事情。  
 My elder brother's stature is both large and tall, therefore carrying water is his job.
21. 香 xiāng SV: fragrant, aromatic, nice-smelling
- a. 这些白花虽然很小,但是很香。  
 Although these white flowers are small, they are nevertheless very fragrant.
- b. 我姐姐做的菜,味儿都很香。  
 The dishes that my elder sister fixes all smell good.
22. 械 xiè BF: implements, instruments, weapons  
 机械化 jīxièhuà SV/N/V: mechanized; mechanization; mechanize (see CR L.9, note #7)
- a. 近年来,中国各方面都渐渐机械化了,所以工业比以前进步多了。  
 In recent years, all aspects of Chinese (life) have gradually been mechanized, therefore there has been much more progress in industry than before.

- b. 如果有机械化的工厂,人民生活水平一定会提高的。

If there are mechanized factories, the people's standard of living will definitely be raised.

23. 叶(子) yè(zǐ) N: leaf, petal (M: 片)  
 茶叶 chá yè N: tea leaves, tea  
 叶绿味香 yè lǜ wèi xiāng Ph: leaves are green, and the scent is fragrant

- a. 我要喝茶,可是没有茶叶了。  
 I want to drink tea, but I haven't any tea leaves.
- b. 如果你去城里,可以替我买点茶叶吗?  
 If you are going into town, could you buy some tea for me?
- c. 因为龙井(Lóngjǐng)茶叶绿味香,所以很有名。

Because Longjing tea leaves are green and the scent is fragrant, it is therefore very famous.  
 (Lóngjǐng -- see Additional Vocabulary, item #8)

24. 忆 yì BF: remember, bear in mind, recall, recollect

回忆 huí yì V: recollect, recall, think back

- a. 我常常回忆在家乡时的幸福生活。  
 I often think back to the happy life I had when I was in my native home.
- b. 我一回忆起敌人的罪行,就愤怒得不能睡觉。

Whenever I recall the crimes of the enemy, I get so angry that I am unable to sleep.

25. 优 yōu BF: excellent, superior  
 优美 yōu měi SV: excellent, superb, outstanding

- a. 世界上风景优美的地方真不少。  
 (There are) many places in the world that have excellent scenery.
- b. 这个地方除了风景优美以外,交通也很方便。

Besides this place having superb scenery, transportation here is also very convenient.

26. 由 yóu BF: as a result, because; by means of, due to, on the strength of  
CV: through, by
- 由于 yóuyú CV: owing to, as a result of, because of, on the grounds of (see CR L.9, note #5)
- a. 由于全国人民的团结, 终于取得革命胜利的**基本保证**。  
As a result of the unity of the people of the entire nation, (we) finally attained the basic guarantee of victory for the revolution.
- b. 由于工厂基本上实现了机械化, 产品质量不断提高了。  
Because basic mechanization of the factory has been realized, quality of products has incessantly been increased.
- c. 由于他继续不断努力, 才有今天的成就。  
Only due to his continued, unceasing efforts do we have the achievements of today.
27. 遭 zāo BF: incur, bear; come across, meet with, suffer
- 遭受 zāoshòu V: suffer, undergo (hardship, bad luck or fortune, difficulties)
- a. 他从小到现在没遭受过任何困难。  
From childhood until now he has never suffered any difficulty.
- b. 解放前很多贫下中农都遭受了地主的压迫和剥削。  
Prior to Liberation, very many poor and lower middle peasants suffered oppression and exploitation by the landlords.
28. 证 zhèng N/BF: proof, evidence, prove, confirm, verify
- 保证 bǎozhèng V: guarantee, ensure, assure (see CR L.9, note #1)
- a. 谁能保证明天的天气很好呢?  
Who can guarantee that tomorrow's weather will be very good?
- b. 只要你不断地努力, 我保证你一定学得很好。  
As long as you continuously work hard I assure you that you will surely master what you are studying.
29. 植 zhí BF: plants, vegetation; plant, cultivate
- 种植 zhòngzhí V: plant; planted, cultivated
- a. 我们生产队决定开辟荒山种植茶树。  
Our production team decided to open up waste mountain land and plant tea bushes.

b. 今天开会 是讨论种植茶树的问题。

Today's meeting will discuss the problems of planting tea bushes (trees).

30. 质 zhì N/BF: quality, substance, character  
(old variant form: 質 - zhí)

质量 zhìliàng N: quality

a. 机械化工厂虽然出产东西快,但质量并不一定好。

Although mechanized factories produce things quickly, quality, however, is really not necessarily good.

b. 我喜欢买质量好的东西。

I like to buy things of good quality.

c. 我们保证这个工厂出产的钢笔质量好。

We guarantee that pens produced by this factory are of good quality.

31. 著 zhù BF: well-known, famous; apparent, obvious; compose, write

著名 zhùmíng Att: well-known, famous  
(see CR L.9, note #8)

a. 杭州(Hángzhōu) 的西湖(Xīhú) 是中国著名的风景区。

Hangzhou's West Lake is one of China's famous scenic areas. (Hangzhou & Xihu -- see Additional Vocabulary, items #7 & #9)

b. 欧洲(Ōuzhōu) 有许多著名的古代建筑。

Europe has many well-known ancient buildings.

Familiar Characters in New Terms:

32. 产地 chǎndì N: a producing center, a growing district (lit. place where something is produced)

a. 杭州(Hángzhōu) 是中国丝绸的著名产地。

Hangzhou is a famous production center for China's silk.

b. 这种树很特别,你知道原来的产地在哪儿吗?

This kind of tree is very unique (special). Do you know the place where it was originally produced (grown)?

## 33. 产量 chǎnliàng

N: yield, output, capacity or volume of production

- a. 如果我们苦干, 每亩的产量一定比从前多一倍。

If we work hard, yield per mu will surely be twice what it was before.

- b. 我觉得在机械化的工厂里, 质量和产量都很重要。

I feel that in a mechanized factory both quality and quantity are very important.

## 34. 成千上万 chéngqiān shàngwàn

Ph: hundreds and thousands

- a. 成千上万的人从各地到这里来参观全国工业展览会。

Hundreds and thousands of people have come from everywhere to visit the All-China Industrial Exhibition.

- b. 生产队把成千上万担好土挑到山上去。

The production team carried hundreds and thousands of loads of good soil up the hill.

## 35. 大队 dàduì

N: brigade, "DADUI" (this term is translated as "brigade" for non-military units only)

## 生产大队 shēngchǎn dàduì

N: production brigade

- a. 我们生产大队准备种植茶树。

Our production brigade is preparing to plant tea bushes.

- b. 龙井(Lóngjǐng)大队今天开会讨论修建水库的问题。

The Longjing Brigade will hold a meeting today to discuss the problems of constructing reservoirs.

- c. 去年全大队苦干了三个月, 终于把工程完成了。

Last year the entire brigade worked hard for three months, and finally completed the construction project.

## 36. 对...来说 duì ... lái shuō

Patt: for ...; as far as ... is concerned  
(see CR L.9, note #2)

- a. 对一个认真工作的人来说, 这些工作两天就做完了。

For a conscientious worker, this work can be completed in two days.

- b. 对有钱的人来说, 丢一些钱没关系。

As far as moneyed people are concerned, the loss of some money does not matter.

37. 丰收 fēngshōu N/V: a bumper crop or harvest,  
rich harvest
- a. 这个地方天气好, 土的质量也好, 所以年年丰收。  
The weather here and the quality of the soil are both good, therefore there is a bumper harvest every year.
- b. 水库修建好了以后, 就能保证丰收了。  
After the reservoir was built, (it) was able to assure a rich harvest.

38. 国内 guónèi PW: inside the country, domestic;  
internal
- 国外 guówài PW: outside the country, abroad;  
external
- 国内外 guónèiwài PW: internally and externally,  
at home and abroad
- 中国的龙井(Lóngjǐng)茶在国内外都很著名。  
China's Longjing tea is very famous both at home and abroad.

39. 活(儿) huó(r) N: work
- 干活(儿) gānhuó(r) VO: work, do a job
- a. 这些活儿三个人做, 一天就做完了。  
All this work can be done in one day by three persons.
- b. 人多好干活儿, 人少好吃饭。  
When there are many people a job can be done easily; when there are few people it is easier to feed them.
- c. 是不是干的活越多, 收入越多?  
If one does more work, is one's income greater?

40. 加工 jiāgōng V: process (goods)
- a. 茶树上的叶子加工以后, 就是我们喝茶用的茶叶。  
After the leaves of tea bushes are processed, they are then the tea (leaves) used in the tea we drink.
- b. 布织好了以后, 还得加工, 才能卖。  
After cloth is woven, it must still be processed, and only then can it be sold.

41. 靠 kào V: lean on, rely on, depend on;  
be near to  
(see CR L.9, note #4)
- a. 靠任何人都不如靠自己。  
Depending upon any person is not as good as relying on oneself.
- b. 我们能有今天的成就, 全都是靠集体的智慧和干劲。  
We are able to have today's achievements, all because of (which depend upon) collective wisdom and energy.
- c. 这个城三面靠山, 一面是海, 风景优美极了。  
Three sides of this city are near the mountains, and one side is the sea -- the scenery is extraordinarily superb.
42. 扩大 kuòdà V: expand, enlarge
- a. 我们学校比三十年前扩大了好几倍。  
Our school has been expanded several times larger than it was 30 years ago.
- b. 城外的那个医院不断地扩大。  
That hospital outside the city has been continually expanding.
43. 乱石 luànshí N: scattered rocks, rock debris, rocks (that are all over the place), rocky
- a. 要把荒山变成公园, 得先把乱石搬走。  
To change waste mountain land into a park, (we) must first move out the rock debris.
- b. 从前这里是乱石山, 现在是优美的风景区了。  
Formerly, this was a mountain of rocks, and now it is an area of excellent scenery.
44. 面积 miànjī N: area, surface, surface area
- a. 美国的面积和中国的差不多一样大。  
The area of the U.S. and (that of) China is almost the same size.
- b. 扩大种植面积以前, 得先解决灌溉问题。  
Before expanding the planted area, (we) must first solve the problem of irrigation.



45. 人工 réngōng N: human labor or effort
- a. 过去织布加工茶叶等全靠人工。  
In the past, the weaving of cloth, the processing of tea leaves, and so on, completely depended upon human labor.
- b. 现在的工厂虽然机械化了,但是有的工作还得靠人工。  
Although factories are now mechanized, some tasks must still depend on manpower.
46. 山村 shāncūn N: mountain village
- a. 在上面的村子称为山村。  
A village atop a mountain is known as a mountain village.
- b. 因为山村的交通很不方便,所以人不多。  
Because transportation is very inconvenient in a mountain village, (therefore) there aren't many people.
47. 山顶 shāndǐng N: top of a mountain, summit, hilltop, mountain peak
- a. 在山顶上盖房子是很艰巨的工程。  
Building a house on top of a mountain is a formidable construction project.
- b. 站在我们学校后头的山顶上向下看,风景优美极了。  
Standing on the hilltop behind our school and looking down, the scenery is outstanding.
48. 少 shào BF: youthful, junior, young
- 男女老少 nán, nǚ, lǎo, shào Ph: men, women, old and young (people)
- a. 敌人进村后,把全村男女老少都赶到广场上去了。  
After the enemy entered the village, all the men, women, old and young (people) of the entire village were herded onto the square.
- b. 公社的社员,男女老少都得劳动吗?  
Of the members of the commune, must the men, women, old and young (people) all work?
49. 实现 shíxiàn V/N: come true, bring to pass, realize; realization
- a. 加工茶叶实现了机械化以后,百分之九十靠机器,剩下的人工可以做别的事情。  
After the processing of tea leaves realized mechanization, 90% (of the work) depended on machines, and the manpower that was saved could (be applied to) do other things.

50. 一冬 yīdōng

TW: all winter (long), the whole winter

- a. 去年一冬没下雪, 所以没办法滑雪。  
Last year it didn't snow all winter long, so there was no way to ski.
- b. 一九六五年我病了一冬, 没上学。  
In 1965 I was sick the whole winter, and didn't attend school.

51. 增加 zēngjiā

N/V: increase; add to, enhance

- a. 你的收入年年增加吗?  
Is your income increasing every year?
- b. 我们学校扩大了, 学生也增加了很多。  
Our school has been expanded, and the number of students has also been greatly increased.

I. Additional Vocabulary.

1. 茶乡

cháxiāng

N: tea-producing district

a. 出产茶的地方称为茶乡。

A place that produces tea is known as a tea-producing district.

b. 龙井 (Lóngjǐng) 是一个著名的茶乡。

Longjing is a well-known tea-producing district.

2. 茶园

cháyuán

N: tea plantation

a. 我们的茶园在山上靠泉水灌溉。

Our tea plantation is atop a mountain, and it depends upon spring water for irrigation.

b. 这个茶园以前是乱石山。

Previously, this tea plantation was a rocky mountain.

3. 炒

chǎo

V: saute, stir-fry; to roast or fire (tea) (one of the steps in processing tea leaves)

a. 母亲炒的菜最好吃。

The vegetables mother stir-fries are the best to eat.

b. 由于生产大队全队的努力,建起了机械化炒茶厂。

As a result of the efforts of our entire production brigade, (we have) built a mechanized tea-roasting plant.

4. 旱

hàn

SV/N: dry, without water; drought

天旱

tiān hàn

EX: the weather is dry, drought

a. 如果有水库,天旱也能保证丰收。

(Even in a) drought, if there is a reservoir, a rich harvest can be ensured.

b. 天一旱,水就不够用了,所以大家  
都得想办法少用一些。

When the weather is dry, there isn't enough water to use, so everybody must think of ways to use less.

5. 貌

mào

BF: general appearance, external appearance, facial appearance; manner

新貌

xīnmào

N: new look

a. 这一课是谈茶乡新貌。

This lesson discusses the new look of the tea-producing district.

- b. "新貌"的意思是新样子。  
"New Look" means new style.

6. 销 xiāo V/BF: sell; consume, use up, digest  
畅销 chàngxiāo V: sell (very) well
- a. 中国的特产象丝茶等,畅销国内外。  
China's unique products, like silk, tea, etc., sell very well at home and abroad.
- b. 近年来,日本有不少产品畅销全世界。  
In recent years, Japan has had many products selling well throughout the world.

Proper Names:

- |       |          |               |
|-------|----------|---------------|
| 7. 杭州 | Hángzhōu | PW: Hangzhou  |
| 8. 龙井 | Lóngjǐng | PW: Longjing  |
| 9. 西湖 | Xīhú     | PW: West Lake |

Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passage and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

一九四九年以前中国西北部多半都是荒地。因为夏天很短很热，冬天又长又冷，雨很少，所以成千上万亩的也不能种植。那些能种植的地，完全靠人工，不能用机器。产量不多，更不要谈丰收了。

特别是在天旱的时候，每一户都早从离他们家很远的地方一担一担的挑水挑到家里去用。他们的收入很少，生活非常困难。

一九四九年以后，特别是近几年，西北基本上变了样子了。过去的荒地，现在不知道多少变成了风景优美，农业产品产地。他们实现了机械化生产，扩大了种植的面积。他们不但产量增加了，质量也增加了。他们的著

名出产现在畅销国内外。

他们在各地都建设了运水工程。他们也把山顶和陡坡上流下来的泉水都储存在水库里。任何时候都可以保证有水用，有水喝。

这些成就是由于西北各地的生产大队里老少们的革命干劲得来的。他们不怕工程上的艰巨，常在干完活以后回忆一九四九年以来遭受的种种困难和畅谈近一年来的幸福生活。大家不但忘了苦干的辛苦，还豪迈地说：“我们一想到共产党给我们带来的幸福生活，我们的干劲就又来了。”

1. What area is discussed? What was the condition of the land there?

2. What kind of situation was created when there was a shortage of rainfall?

3. What about the land that could be planted?

- . What was not much? What was useless to talk about?
  
- . What did the people do when there was a drought?
  
- . What was very low?
  
- . List four changes that have taken place since 1949:
  - a.
  
  - b.
  
  - c.
  
  - d.
  
- . What was built at various places?
  
- . What was the reservoir used for, and where did that come from?
  
- . How were such accomplishments possible?
  
- . What were they not afraid of?
  
- . What did they often do after they had finished their work?

13. Following that, what did they forget? What did they say? How was it said?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.



<u>swer Key:</u>	<u>Score</u>
<u>Northwest China; most of the land was barren</u> 1 1 2	4
<u>hundreds and thousands of "mu" of land could not be planted</u> 2 2 1 2	7
it was <u>completely dependent upon manual (human) labor and</u> 1 2 2	7
<u>could not use machinery</u> 1 1	
<u>output; bumper harvest</u> 2 2	4
they had to <u>carry load after (upon) load of water to their homes</u> 2 2 1 2 1	9
<u>from afar</u> 1	
their <u>incomes</u> 2	2
a. much <u>barren land was changed into agricultural product</u> 2 1 1 1	30
<u>producing districts with excellent scenery</u> 2 2 2	
b. they have <u>realized mechanized production</u> 2 2 1	
c. they had <u>expanded the cultivated area, and</u> 2 2 2	
d. not only had <u>output increased, but quality was also enhanced</u> 2 2 2 2	
<u>water-transporting (transport water) construction projects</u> 1 2	
to <u>store up the spring water that flowed down from the mountaintop</u> 2 2 1 2	11
and <u>steep slopes</u> 2 2	
they were <u>due to the revolutionary vigor of the old and young people</u> 2 1 2 2	11
in the <u>production brigades everywhere in the Northwest</u> 2 1 1	
the <u>arduousness (difficulty) of the construction project</u> 2 2	4
they <u>recalled the various kinds of difficulties that were suffered</u> 2 1 1 2	11
prior to 1949, and <u>talked freely of their fortunate lives</u> 2 1 1	
<u>in recent years</u> 1	

13. hardships of the whole day's hard work; they said, "As soon as we 14  
recall the fortunate life that the Communist Party brought, our vigor  
returns;" in a magnificent spirit

---

Total: 117

Passing: 82

Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and/or passages in the spaces provided. Translation must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

过去茶叶加工  
主要靠人工。现  
在因为实现了  
机械化,茶叶加  
工靠机器。过去  
几十个人干的  
活,现在几个人  
就够了。机器加  
工的茶叶味更  
香,质量更好。

1. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

过去,中国加工  
茶叶完全靠人  
工。解放后,由  
基本上,实现了  
机械化,不但产  
量增加了,而且  
质量也提高了。

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

现在中国的茶叶已经畅销全世界了。

3. 最近,我们车间开了一个座谈会。在会上大家回忆了解放前,工人们遭受各种压迫和剥削。大家还畅谈了解放以后的幸福生活。工人们还豪迈地说:"为了实现社会主义,我们愿意多干活,保证很快实现生产机械化。"

3.

大名鼎鼎的农业生产队，他  
们有八百四十多户，男女  
老少共一千多人。解放前，  
他们遭受地主的压迫，翻身  
后，干劲很大，不但把全部  
荒山都种上，还保证年年  
丰收。

4.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

第三生产大队，都在天  
上，所以种的水，为生  
产，保证丰收，男女  
老少，都保证丰收。

5.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

山的一但坡所修工程非常非  
 常一担上山方便，决定这个生是  
 常一担挑上山方决这第三说的，  
 少一水因为不近库第来巨  
 老下把是陡以建程大常

6. 我看过一个电 6.  
 影是一个叶那山现是美的山水储  
 一茶前多，陡经优由建水  
 介绍最产里坡在个茶顶库起  
 一个中名的地高里风园上把泉灌  
 地的从很又已景了。修泉灌

方每加都的参  
常叶增年万去  
非茶量每上里  
园,因此产在,千那  
茶,因的现成到访  
溉便,亩了.有人观

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

人民大社题.增加扩有收现大分最劲能了  
7. 人员论问增要积.加实化.很看干才有  
区社讨入想定面增要机意见我是劲收,  
郊开要收说一植要定机意见我是劲收,  
天社主的有人收入种说一产的但要是干丰  
昨公,会,员有收大人入生家歧,重有保

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

丰收,才能增加  
社员的收入.

---

---

---

When you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations that follow.



ey - Model Translations:

Paragraph 1:

In the past, / the processing / of tea / mainly / depended on / human labor. /  
1 2 2 1 2 2  
Now, / because / mechanization / has been realized, / the processing /  
1 1 2 2 2  
of tea / depends on / machines. / Work / that was done /  
2 2 1 2 1  
by several tens of people / in the past / can now / be done by just a few  
1 1 1 2  
(only a few people are enough). / machine- / -processed / tea /  
1 2 2  
has an even more / fragrant / aroma / and the quality / is even better. /  
1 2 1 2 1  
(31/43)

Paragraph 2:

In the past, / China's / processing / of tea / completely / depended on /  
1 1 2 2 1 2  
human labor. / After / Liberation, / because / mechanization /  
2 1 1 1 2  
had been basically / realized, / not only / the volume of production /  
2 2 1 2  
increased, / but / the quality / was also / improved. / Now, / Chinese /  
2 1 2 1 2 1 1  
tea / already / sells very well / throughout / the world. / (28/40)  
2 1 2 1 1

Paragraph 3:

Recently, / the workers / of our / workshop / held a /  
1 1 1 1 1  
round-table discussion. / In the meeting, / everyone / recalled (events) /  
2 1 1 2  
prior to / Liberation, / (when) the workers / suffered / various kinds of /  
1 1 1 2 1  
oppression / and / exploitation. / In addition, / everybody / talked freely /  
1 1 1 1 2  
(about their) fortunate / life / since (after) / Liberation. / The workers /  
1 1 1 1 1  
also / magnanimously / stated, / "In order to / realize / socialism, /  
1 2 1 1 2 1  
we / are willing to / do more / work / to assure / (we) rapidly / realize /  
1 1 2 2 2 1 2  
production / mechanization." / (36/51)  
1 2

Paragraph 4:

The "Dong-Fang Hong" / Production Brigade / is an advanced / brigade /  
well-known / throughout the nation. / Altogether / they have / over 800 /  
households, / and all told / there are / over 4000 /  
men, women, old and young people. / Prior to / Liberation / they / suffered /  
oppression / by the landlord(s). / After / Liberation, / they were /  
emancipated. / Their / drive / is very great -- / they / not only / planted /  
things / on all of / the barren hills, / but / also / have ensured / yearly /  
rich harvests. / (35/50)  
 2

Paragraph 5:

All / the land / of the Third / Production Brigade / is on top of a mountain, /  
so / as soon as there is / a drought, / there is / no water / for things /  
that are planted. / In order to / guarantee / a rich harvest, /  
the men, women, old and young people / of the production brigade / often /  
carry / load / upon / load / of water / from down the mountain /  
up onto the mountain. / But, / because / the mountain / is high / and  
and the slope / is steep, / and it is very inconvenient, / therefore /  
it was recently / decided / to construct / a reservoir. / For / the Third /  
Production Brigade, / this construction project / is extraordinarily /  
formidable. / (42/60)  
 2

Paragraph 6:

I saw / a movie / that introduced / one of China's / most / famous / tea- /  
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 /  
producing centers. / Formerly, / there was much / barren land / there, /  
2 1 1 2 1 /  
and the slopes / were both high / and steep. / Now, / that place (there) /  
2 1 2 1 1 /  
is already / a tea plantation / with superb / scenery. / As a result of /  
1 2 2 2 2 /  
the construction / of a reservoir / on the mountaintop / to store up /  
2 1 2 2 /  
spring water, / irrigating / the tea plantation / is very convenient; /  
2 1 2 1 /  
therefore, / the output / of tea leaves / for each / "mu" /  
2 2 2 1 2 /  
has been increased. / Now, / each year / there are / hundreds and thousands /  
2 1 1 1 2 /  
of people / who go there / to tour / and visit. / (45/63)  
1 1 1 1

Paragraph 7:

Yesterday / the Suburban / People's / Commune / held a meeting /  
1 1 1 1 1 /  
of commune members, / mainly / to discuss / the question / of income /  
1 1 1 1 2 /  
of the commune members. / Someone / said / if we wish to / increase /  
1 1 1 1 2 /  
income / we should / definitely / expand / the area / that is planted. /  
2 1 1 2 2 2 /  
Someone / said / if we want to / increase / income, / we should / definitely /  
1 1 1 2 2 1 1 /  
realize / production / mechanization. / Everyone's / opinion / was different, /  
2 1 2 1 1 2 /  
but / I think / that the most important (thing) / is drive (vigor). /  
1 1 1 2 /  
Only with / drive / can we / ensure / a rich harvest, / and only with /  
1 2 1 2 2 1 /  
a rich harvest / can / the income / of the commune members / be increased. /  
2 1 2 1 2 /

(47/67)

一周。长城虽然经过两千多年的风吹雨打，但大部分还很完整，根基也很牢固。

万里长城表现了中国人民克服困难的坚强毅力，是勤劳的中国人民智慧的结晶。

## 第十课 万里长城

从北京坐上往西北去的火车，不久就可以看见一道很长的城墙，在起伏的高山上向远方延伸，十分雄伟壮观。这就是世界闻名的万里长城。每到假日，都有很多人到这里来游览。许多来中国访问的外国朋友也常常到这里来参观。

长城是两千多年前的战国时代开始修筑的。到了秦朝，又用了十几年的时间，把原来一段一段的城墙连接起来，并加以扩展。以后，长城又进行过多次修理和加固。

长城东起山海关，西至嘉峪关，全长约五千里。在关口和险要的地方，常常有好几层城墙，这样，它的实际长度就有一万二千多里了。后来，人们就叫它万里长城。长城高约三丈，宽一丈五尺到两丈。如果用修长城的砖修一道七尺高、四尺宽的墙，就可以环绕地球

### 生词 New words

1. 里	(量) lǐ	unit of length, equal to 0.5 km.
2. 久	(形) jiǔ	long (time)
3. 道	(量) dào	a measure word
4. 起伏	(形) qǐfú	now rising, now falling; undulating
5. 远方	(名) yuǎnfāng	(in) the distance
6. 伸延	(动) shēnyán	to stretch
7. 十分	(副) shífēn	very, extremely
8. 壮观	(形) zhuànguān	magnificent, grand
9. 闻名	(形) wénmíng	well-known
10. 假日	(名) jiàrì	holiday
11. 游览	(动) yóulǎn	to go sight-seeing, to go on an excursion
12. 时代	(名) shídài	time, era
13. 修筑	(动) xiūzhù	to build
14. 段	(量) duàn	a measure word, stretch

15. 连接 (动) liánjiē to join
16. 并 (连) bìng and
17. 加以 (动) jiāyǐ *expression to go with a disyllabic verb*
18. 扩展 (动) kuòzhǎn to extend, to expand
19. 加固 (动) jiāgù to strengthen
20. 起 (动) qǐ from, to begin
21. 至 (动) zhì to, to end
22. 约 (形) yuē about
23. 关口 (名) guānkǒu pass
24. 险要 (形) xiǎnyào strategically important
25. 层 (名、量) céng layer, storey
26. 实际 (名) shíjì actual, practice
27. 长度 (名) chángdù length
28. 丈 (量) zhàng *unit of length, equal to 3 $\frac{1}{3}$ m.*
29. 宽 (形) kuān broad
30. 尺 (量) chǐ *unit of length, equal to 1/3 m.*
31. 环绕 (动) huánràò to encircle, to go round
32. 地球 (名) dìqiú the earth
33. 周 (量) zhōu circumference
34. 风吹雨打 fēngchuīyǔdǎ weather-worn

35. 完整 (形) wánzhěng intact, integral
36. 根基 (名) gēnjī foundation
37. 牢固 (形) láogù firm, solid
38. 表现 (动) biǎoxiàn to manifest, to show
39. 毅力 (名) yìlì fortitude, willpower
40. 结晶 (名) jiéjīng crystallization

### 专名 Proper names

1. 长城 Chángchéng the Great Wall
2. 战国时代 Zhànguó Shídài the Period of Warring States
3. 秦朝 Qíncháo Ch'in Dynasty
4. 山海关 Shānhǎiguān the Shanhai Pass
5. 嘉峪关 Jiāyùguān the Chiayu Pass

### 词语例解 Notes

#### 1. 不久

“久”常和“很”、“好”、“多”连用。“很久”、“好久”表示时间很长。否定形式是“不久”、“不很久”、“不多久”、“没有很久”、“没有多久”、“没有好久”。例如：

“久” is usually used together with “很”, “好” or “多”. “很久” and “好久” mean a long time. The negative forms are “不久”,

“不很久”，“不多久”，“没有很久”，“没有多久” and “没有好久”。  
E.g.

- (1) 很久没有见到你了。
- (2) 不久以前他到这儿来过。
- (3) 他离开这儿不很久，情况却发生了很大的变化。
- (4) 我出来没有多久，天就下雨了。

提问则用“多久”。例如：

“多久” is used in interrogative sentences. E.g.

- (5) 你要在这儿住多久？

### 2. 每到

- (1) 每到冬天，人们都喜欢到北海公园去滑冰。
- (2) 每到天旱的时候，就用水库的水灌溉茶园。

### 3. 加以

“加以”是书面语。用在双音节动词前，表示对前面提到的事物施以某种动作。“加以”后的动词后面不能带任何其它成分，也不能重叠。例如：

“加以” is a literary expression used before a disyllabic verb to show that the action represented by this verb is applied to what has been mentioned before. The verb after “加以” cannot take anything after it nor can it be reduplicated. E.g.

- (1) 工作中的问题，要一个一个加以解决。

(2) 这个意见很重要，应该很好地加以研究。

### 4. 实际

- (1) 理论必须联系实际。
- (2) 这位工人实际工作经验比我们多。

“实际”作状语时还可以说“实际上”。例如：

As an adverbial adjunct, “实际上” may be used instead of “实际”. E.g.

- (3) 这件工作我以为一小时才能做完，但是实际上只用了半小时。

### 练习 Exercises

一、熟读词组： Read aloud the following phrases:

1. 加以研究 加以分析 加以解决  
加以讨论
2. 实际经验 实际工作 实际情况  
实际斗争 实际行动
3. 表现了很大决心 表现了坚强的毅力  
表现了国际主义精神 表现得英勇

二、选词填空： Fill the blanks:

1. 修建、修理

- (1) 我们要在这条河的北边\_\_\_\_\_一座工厂。

(2) 机器坏了,得\_\_\_\_\_一下。

2. 表示、表现

(1) 王国防福同志\_\_\_\_\_了毫不利己、专门利人的精神。

(2) 同学们纷纷\_\_\_\_\_:一定要互相学习,互相帮助,共同提高。

三、完成句子: Complete the following sentences:

1. \_\_\_\_\_, 我们学校都举行运动会。

(每到)

2. \_\_\_\_\_, 这里经常下雨。(每到)

3. 这个老工人在汽车制造厂工作了多年, \_\_\_\_\_。(实际)

4. 我以为那座山离我们很近, \_\_\_\_\_。(实际上)

5. 对这些情况\_\_\_\_\_。(加以)

6. 这个问题应该怎样解决, 还得\_\_\_\_\_。(加以)

7. 这些古代建筑\_\_\_\_\_。(表现)

8. 他在学习中\_\_\_\_\_。(表现)

四、翻译下面的短文: Translate the following passage into English:

上星期日, 我们游览了长城。那天是假

日, 游览长城的人很多。我们看到, 长城屹立在高山上, 向远方伸延, 十分雄伟壮观。长城虽然经过千百年的风吹雨打, 但根基还很牢固。我们感到, 万里长城的确是中国人民智慧的结晶。

五、写一段话, 尽量用上下列词语:

as many as possible of the following words:

Write a passage using

假日 游览 闻名 风景 显得 吸引  
树林 村子 庄稼 印象 交通 方便

STUDY RESOURCESI. Required Vocabulary.A. New Characters and Terms:

1. 层 céng N/M: layer, tier; story, floor (of a building)
- a. 这座楼只有三层, 世界上最高的楼有多少层?  
This building has only 3 stories. How many stories does the world's tallest building have?
- b. 你知道为什么宿舍里的床多半是(上下)两层的?  
Do you know why most dormitory beds are (up and down) two-tiered?
- c. 我们的教室在第二层楼, 也可以说在二楼。  
Our classroom is on the second floor, or one can also say on the second story.

2. 尺 chǐ N/M: ruler (M: 把); "chǐ," foot (unit of length equal to 1/3 meter in metric system, or 1 foot in U.S. system)
- (Note: Since China uses the metric system, this measure must be translated as simply "chi" in sentences which specifically have a Chinese context.)
- a. 一米有三尺。  
There are 3 "chi" in one meter.
- b. 我十二岁就有六尺高了。  
I was (already) six feet tall when I was twelve.
- c. 这棵老树高一百多尺。  
This old tree is over 100 feet tall.

3. 吹 chuī V: blow
- 风吹雨打 fēng chuī yǔ dǎ Ph: weather-worn, weathered, weathering (lit. blown by wind, struck by rain)
- a. 山上的石头经过多年来的风吹雨打, 都碎了。  
Through many years of weathering, the rocks on the hill were all broken down.



- b. 很多古代建筑虽然经过几百年的  
风吹雨打,但是色彩还很好。

Although having undergone hundreds of years of weathering, many ancient buildings still have beautiful coloring.

4. 段 duàn N/M: section, stretch (of road or other construction); paragraph; period (of time)

- a. 这段路一下雨就很滑,开车得特别小心。

This stretch of road is very slippery when it rains. When you drive you must be especially careful.

- b. 这节课一共有五段,老师叫我们每人翻译一段。

This lesson has five sections. The teacher asked each of us to translate one section.

5. 伏 fú BF: lie prone, prostrate oneself, bow  
起伏 qǐfú SV: rising and falling, undulating

- a. 从飞机上往下看,海边起伏的高山显得很雄伟。

Looking down from an airplane, the high mountains undulating along the coast seem very magnificent.

- b. 在起伏不平的道路上骑自行车是很好的运动。

Riding a bicycle on a road that rises and falls unevenly is very good exercise.

6. 根 gēn N: foundation, root, origin  
根基 gēnjī N: foundation

- a. 一个建筑的根基是房子、楼或其他建筑等在地下的那一部分。

The foundation of a construction is that part of a house, building or other structure that is underneath the ground.

- b. 因为房子漏水,所以把根基弄坏了。

Because the house leaked, the foundation was ruined.

- c. 如果你不努力学习,没有好根基,上大学时一定有困难。

If you don't study industriously, you won't have a good foundation. When you enter college you will definitely have difficulties.

7. 固 gù BF: solid, strong; stubborn, obstinate

加固 jiāgù V: strengthen

- a. 加固长城和别的古代建筑都是艰巨的工程。

Strengthening the Great Wall and other ancient buildings are all formidable construction projects.

- b. 今天我们要讨论加固据点的问题。

Today we will discuss the problem of strengthening the fortified point(s).

8. 假 jià BF: leave of absence, holiday

假日 jiàrì N: holiday

- a. 假日的时候我最喜欢在家听听音乐, 看看书, 休息休息。

On holidays I like best of all to listen to music at home, read books and rest up a bit.

- b. 到了假日, 公园里, 海边上总是有许多人。

On holidays, there are always many people in the parks and on the beaches.

- c. 游击队也有假日吗?

Do guerrillas also have holidays?

9. 久 jiǔ SV: long (time)  
(see CR L.10, note #1)

- a. 好久没见, 最近怎么样?

I haven't seen you for a long time. How have you been lately?

- b. 我离开北京不久, 解放军就进城了。

Not long after I left Beijing, the liberation army entered the city.

- c. “你们来多久了?” “没(有)多久。”

"How long have you been here?" "Not too long."

10. 宽 kuān SV: wide, broad

- a. 这张桌子长三尺, 宽两尺半, 面积有多大?

This table is 3 feet long and 2 1/2 feet wide. How large is its area?

- b. 那条路不够宽, 不能同时过两辆汽车。

That road is not wide enough. Two cars cannot pass by at the same time.

11. 牢 láo SV: solid, strong, securely

牢固 láogù SV: firm, secure, solid

a. 楼越高, 根基越应该牢固。

The taller the building, the firmer the foundation should be.

b. 我们把那个叛徒绑得非常牢固。

We have bound the traitor very securely.

12. 里 lǐ N/M: "li" (unit of length equal to 500 meters or  $\frac{1}{2}$  kilometer), mile

(Note: in a specifically U.S. setting, translated as "mile.")

万里长城 wànlǐ chángchéng N: the Great Wall (lit. 10,000 "li" long wall; often abbreviated "长城")

a. 万里长城是中国古代为了抵挡敌人的进攻建筑的。

The Great Wall was built in ancient China to ward off attacks by the enemy.

b. 在中国特别快的(火)车, 每小时可以走一百二三十里。

In China the special express trains can go 120-130 "li" per hour.

13. 球 qiú N: ball, sphere

地球 dìqiú N: the earth

a. 地球的面积很大, 但是四分之三被水盖着。

The area of the earth is very large, but  $\frac{3}{4}$  of it is covered by water.

b. 如果地球上所有的人都说一种话, 就没有战争了吗?

If everybody on earth spoke one language, then wouldn't there be any wars?

14. 绕 rào V: wind around, wrap around, circle, surround; detour, go around

环绕 huánràò V: (go) around, encircle, circle

a. 我每天环绕操场跑二十分钟。

Every day I run around the athletic field for 20 minutes.

- b. 谁是世界上第一个坐船环绕地球的人。

Who was the first person in the world to circle the earth by ship?

15. 延 yán BF: to stretch; delay, prolong, draw out

伸延 shēnyán V: stretch out, extend

- a. 中国的黄河向东方伸延一直流到海里去。

China's Yellow River stretches out toward the east, and flows straight into the sea.

- b. 万里长城从山海关 (Shānhǎiguān) 开始向西延伸到嘉峪关 (Jiāyùguān)。

The Great Wall of China begins at Shanhaiguan and extends westwards to Jiayuguan. (Shanhaiguan & Jiayuguan -- see Additional Vocabulary, items #5 & #3)

16. 毅 yì BF: be resolute

毅力 yìlì N: fortitude, resoluteness, persistence

- a. 要把一件事情做好没有毅力不行。

If you want to do something properly, you must have persistence (lit. without persistence it won't be satisfactory).

- b. 中国人民过去用坚强的毅力克服了种种困难。

In the past the Chinese people overcame many kinds of difficulties through unyielding resoluteness.

17. 约 yuē A: approximately, about

- a. 黄河全长约五千里。

The total length of the Yellow River is approximately 5000 li.

- b. 现在从美国西部坐飞机到东部约五小时。

From the U.S. West Coast to the East Coast by plane now takes about 5 hours.

18. 丈 zhàng N/M: "zhàng" (unit of length equal to 10 "chi" (3 1/3 meters or approximately 10.9 feet))

a. 一丈有十尺, 那么两丈就是二十尺。

One "zhang" has 10 "chi." So two "zhang" have 20 "chi".

b. 长城高约三丈, 宽一丈五(尺)到两丈。

The Great Wall is approximately 3 "zhang" high and 1 "zhang," 5 "chi" (1 1/2 zhang) wide.

19. ...至... zhì ... LW: ... to ...; ... reaching or extending to ... (like "到") (see also item #30)

a. 王同志从今日中午至明日中午一共要工作二十四小时。

From this noon to tomorrow noon, Comrade Wang has to work for a total of 24 hours.

b. 美国的面积很大, 东至大西洋, 西至太平洋, 南至墨西哥(Mòxīgē), 北至加拿大。

The area of America is very large. (It extends) east to the Atlantic Ocean, west to the Pacific Ocean, south to Mexico and north to Canada.

B. Familiar Characters in New Terms:

20. 表现 biǎoxiàn V/N: manifest, show, express; performance (achievement), expression

a. 他在这次战争中, 表现了为国牺牲的精神。

During this war he manifested the spirit of sacrifice for the sake of the nation.

b. 年轻的学生们表现了很大的决心帮助军队消灭敌人。

Young students showed great determination in helping the troops annihilate the enemy.

21. 并 bìng Conj: and, also, at the same time

a. 增加产量并提高质量是我们生产大目的。

Increasing output and raising quality are the goals of our production brigade.

- b. 中国运动员来美国除了比赛以外，并加强了两国人民的友谊。

In coming to the U.S., the Chinese athletes, aside from competing, also strengthened friendship between people of the two nations.

23. 长度 chángdù N: length

- a. 一丈和十尺的长度一样。

The lengths of one "zhang" and 10 "chi" are the same.

- b. 美国那一条河最长？你知道它的长度吗？

Which river in America is the longest? Do you know its length?

- c. 每课课文的长度都不一样。

The length of each lesson is different.

24. 道 dào M: (for walls)

- a. 中国西北部那道很长的墙是万里长城。

That very long wall in Northwest China is the Great Wall.

- b. 为了抵挡敌人，有的城在周围建起了一道高墙叫城墙。

In order to fend off the enemy, some cities built high walls all around, which are called city walls.

25. 关 guān N: frontier pass or gate

关口 guānkǒu N: (mountain) pass, frontier pass or gate

- a. 在中国古代的关口，常常有好几层城墙。

In the ancient passes of China there are often several layers of city walls (fortifications).

- b. 有些关口已经进行过多次修理和加固了。

Some passes have already undergone repeated repairing and strengthening.

25. 加以 jiāyǐ

(An extraneous expression used before a two-syllable verb to show that the action of the verb is somewhat more intense or performed to a somewhat greater degree than usual. Sometimes translated "further," "a little more;" most often not translated.)  
(see CR L.10, note #3)

a. 这个报告的内容我们应该加以讨论和研究。

We should discuss and study the contents of this report.

b. 老师把语法上的问题一个一个的加以分析了。

The teacher analyzed the problems in grammar one by one.

26. 扩展 kuòzhǎn

V/N: expand, extend; expansion

a. 我们住的这个城正在进行扩展。

The city that we are living in is in the midst of undergoing expansion.

b. 日本的贸易已经扩展到欧洲(Ōuzhōu)了。

Japanese trade has already extended to Europe.

27. 连接 liánjiē

V: connect, join together (things, places, etc.)

a. 这几个小城都向外扩展,不久就可以连接起来了。

These several small towns are all expanding outwardly, and soon they will be able to join up with each other.

b. 生产大队准备把一段一段的小路连接起来。

The production brigade is preparing to connect many small sections of the road.

28. 每到 měi dào ...

A: whenever ...  
(see CR L.10, note #2)

a. 每到风景优美的地方,我总喜欢照几张象。

Whenever I go to a place with excellent scenery, I always like to take several pictures.

b. 每到冬天我们总要去滑几次雪。

Whenever it is wintertime, we always want to go skiing a few times.

c. 有的人每到开会就睡觉。

Some people go to sleep whenever they go to meetings.

29. 起 qǐ V: rise, begin (from a time or place)  
 起...至... qǐ ... zhì ... Patt: beginning at ... extending to ...  
 ...起A...至B (Dir) qǐ (A) (Dir) zhì (B)  
 Patt: beginning at (Location A) in the  
 (Direction) and extending to  
 (location B) in the (Direction)

- a. 万里长城东起山海关 (Shānhǎiguān), 西至嘉峪关 (Jiāyùguān).

The Great Wall begins in the east at Shanhaiguan and ends in the west at Jiayuguan.

- b. 三月二十一日起, 至六月二十二是春天。

Beginning on 21 March and ending on 22 June, it is spring.

30. 时代 shídài N: era, time, epoch, age, period

- a. 因为时代不一样, 所以人的思想也不一样。

Since there are differences in the eras, people's thoughts are also different.

- b. 公元前, 中国有一段时间总有战争, 这一段时间在历史上称为战国时代。

Before Christ, there was a period of time in China when there was always warfare. Historically, this period of time is called the Period of Warring States.

31. 十分 shífēn A: very, extremely, completely, fully

(Note: used like "非常;" more emphatic than "很")

- a. 现在的飞机十分快。

Present airplanes are extremely fast.

- b. 他是一位十分认真的好学生。

He is a very conscientious, good student.

32. 实际 shíjì SV/A/N: practical, actual; practically, actually; reality, actuality  
 (see CR L.10, note #4)

- 实际上 shíjìshàng A: in reality, in practice, in actuality, in fact

- a. 那位老工人在茶厂工作了多年, 有许多实际经验。

That old worker has worked in the tea factory for many years. He has a lot of practical experience.



- b. 从前我以为中文很难学, 实际上并不难。

Formerly I thought that Chinese was difficult to learn. In reality it isn't difficult at all.

33. 完整 wánzhěng

SV: complete, intact, whole, undamaged

- a. 北京城周围的城墙至今(天)还很完整。

The city wall surrounding Beijing to this day is still very much intact.

- b. 从地下挖出来不少古代的东西, 多半都不完整。

Most of the ancient things excavated (dug out) from the ground are damaged.

34. 闻名 wénmíng

SV: well-known, famous

- a. 世界闻名的龙井(Lóngjǐng)茶在这里也买得着吗?

Is it possible to buy the world-famous Longjing tea here also?

- b. 《黄河》是一部全国闻名的协奏曲。

"Yellow River" is a concerto well-known throughout the country.

35. 险要 xiǎnyào

SV: strategically important, strategic

- a. 据点都在险要的地方吗?

Are all fortified points in strategically important places?

- b. 那个关口非常险要, 应该多派些军队去。

That pass is extraordinarily strategically important. More troops should be sent there.

36. 修筑 xiūzhù

V: build, construct

- a. 我们得在产地和城市之间修筑道路。

We must construct roads between the production centers and the cities.

- b. 万里长城是在起伏的高山上修筑的。

The Great Wall was built atop high, undulating hills.

## 37. 游览 yóulǎn

V: tour or visit (a place), go sightseeing,  
go on an excursion

- a. 每到假日都有很多人去游览著名的风景区。

Every time whenever there is a holiday, there are always many people that go to visit famous scenic areas.

- b. 我真希望有机会坐船环绕地球游览全世界。

I really wish I had a chance to take a ship around the world and tour the entire world.

## 38. 远方 yuǎnfāng

N: a distant place, distant regions,  
(in the) distance

- a. 每年十月一日都有不少外国人从远方到北京去参加中国国庆。

Each year on 1 October, many foreigners come to Beijing from distant places to take part in China's National Day.

- b. 敌人进城了, 快逃到远方去吧, 越远越好。

The enemy has entered the city. Better flee to a distant place -- the farther the better.

## 39. 周 zhōu

M: (circuit, cycle, revolution)

- a. 开运动会时, 运动员先环绕运动场走一周。

To open an athletic meet, the athletes first walk once around the field.

- b. 地球环绕太阳一周是一年。

The earth circles once around the sun in one year.

I. Additional Vocabulary.

1. 晶 jīng

BF: crystal, bright

结晶 jiéjīng

N/V: crystallization; crystallize

- a. 万里长城是中国劳动人民智慧的结晶。

The Great Wall is the crystallization of the intelligence (wisdom) of China's working class.

- b. 我参观过一个博物馆,有许多各种色彩和各种样子的结晶,十分有意思。

I visited a museum once, and it had many crystals of various colors and types. It was very interesting.

2. 壮观 zhuànguān

SV: grand, magnificent, spectacular

- a. 从飞机上向下看万里长城,真是雄伟壮观的大建筑。

Looking down from a plane at the Great Wall, it really is a magnificent and grand structure.

- b. 水从几万尺的高山上流下来,象一块很大的白布,非常壮观。

The water flows down from thousands of feet up in the mountains, looking like a great strip of white cloth, and it is extraordinarily magnificent.

Proper Names:

3. 嘉峪关 Jiāyùguān

PW: Jiayuguan

4. 秦朝 Qíncháo

N: Qin Dynasty (255 to 209 B.C.)

5. 山海关 Shānhǎiguān

PW: Shanhaiguan

## PRACTICE EXERCISES

I. Reading Comprehension.

INSTRUCTIONS - Read the passages and answer the questions that follow concerning its content. Write your answers below the questions in the workbook. You may read the passage as many times as necessary, but may not refer to the study resources or use a dictionary. Criterion cutoff is 70% of the correct answers.

去年十二月的假日里,我们一家周  
四,本来计划坐飞机环绕地球一周,  
游览世界各地。可是我爱人觉得这个  
计划用钱太多,结果我们到美国南部  
一座最闻名的高山去游览去了。

那座高山东起罗马 (Luómǎ) 河,南至  
安士丁 (Ānshìdīng) 河。它的长约一百六十  
多里。有的地方宽六十里,有的地方宽  
三十里。

我们在起伏的高山上向远方伸  
延的一条山路上开车。因为有好几段  
路都坏了,所以得很小心。我们在那  
山路上的关了很久的关口。那个关  
险要的山顶上。那个关口在一个风景  
美的山顶上。

在那个山顶上，有好几座雄伟壮观的高楼。每一座高楼都围有四层。同时，绕着这几座高楼的城墙，连接起来很雄伟。

那道城墙高约四丈，宽约一丈五。几座楼和城墙都是南方军队大修的。在几个据点，到近几年来才大修理了一次，并加以扩展。

虽然那几座楼和城墙经过了一多年的风吹雨打，但大部分还很完好。它的根基还很牢固。

这个险要的据点表现了南方军队克服困难的坚强毅力，是勤劳的南方军队智慧的结晶。

When, and on what occasion did we go on an excursion?

2. What was the original plan to which my wife objected?
3. Where did we finally go?
4. In the story, what is the significance of the Rome and Anniston Rivers?
5. What are the dimensions of that mountain (range)?
6. On what kind of mountain road did we drive?
7. What were the conditions of the road?
8. How long were we enroute?
9. Afterwards, where did we arrive at?
10. How tall were the buildings?
11. What are the dimensions of the wall?

2. When were the buildings and wall built?
3. What happened in recent years?
4. What has happened over the past 100+ years?
5. What is the present condition of these structures?
5. What does this strategically important fortified point manifest?

Check your answers and calculate your score using the answer key on the next page.

<u>Answer Key:</u>	<u>Score</u>
1. on a <u>holiday</u> in <u>December</u> of <u>last year</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u>	4
2. to <u>go around</u> the <u>world</u> by <u>air(plane)</u> and <u>visit various places</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>in the world</u> <u>1</u>	9
3. we went <u>sightseeing</u> to a very <u>well-known high mountain</u> in the <u>2</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>south of the U.S.</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u>	7
4. the <u>mountains</u> <u>begin</u> in the <u>east</u> at the <u>Rome River</u> and <u>end</u> at the <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u> <u>Anniston River</u> in the <u>south</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u>	11
5. its <u>length</u> is <u>about 160 miles</u> ; the <u>width</u> at <u>some places</u> is <u>2</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>60 miles</u> , and at <u>some places</u> it is <u>30 miles wide</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u>	19
6. a <u>road</u> on an <u>undulating, high mountain</u> , that <u>extended into</u> (towards) <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>the distance</u> <u>2</u>	9
7. <u>quite a few sections were bad</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u>	4
8. a <u>very long time</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u>	3
9. at an <u>extremely strategically important pass</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u>	6
10. <u>four stories</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u>	3
11. <u>about 4 zhang tall</u> and <u>about 1 zhang, 5 (chi) (1½ zhang) wide</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u>	16
12. <u>during the era of the American Civil War</u> (American War Between the <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> North and South)	5
13. <u>major repairs</u> (were carried out) <u>once</u> , and <u>moreover</u> it was (further) <u>1</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u> <u>expanded</u> <u>2</u>	6
14. the <u>wall</u> and the <u>buildings</u> have <u>undergone weathering</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u>	5
15. <u>most</u> are <u>still very much intact</u> , and their <u>foundations</u> are <u>still</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u> <u>2</u> <u>1</u> <u>very solid</u> <u>1</u> <u>2</u>	11



6. the staunch fortitude of the Southern Army in overcoming 12  
1 2 1 1  
difficulties, and it is the crystallization of the intelligence of  
1 2 2  
the diligent Southern Army!  
1 1

---

Total: 130  
Passing: 91

II. Translation Exercise:

INSTRUCTIONS - Translate all the following sentences and /or passages in the spaces provided. Translations must be written in acceptable English and must correctly convey the meaning of the original Chinese. Read over your English translations and insure that they make sense.

You may use a dictionary and the "Additional Vocabulary," but it is recommended that you try not to refer to the "Required Vocabulary." Criterion cutoff is 70%-accurate translations.

1. 在古代,为了抵挡  
 敌人的进攻,中国  
 把一些险要的地  
 方修筑成关口。到  
 了现在,经过了儿  
 千年,因为时代的  
 变迁,有些关口要  
 加固,有些关口要  
 扩展,另外的地方  
 还要修筑成新的  
 关口,这些问题中  
 一个已经加以解  
 决了。为了使这  
 些关系可以互相  
 联系,中国并准备  
 把一些小路连接  
 起来。

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

2. 世界这道墙，千起筑海实，两千壮叫国世  
界这多民伏的关，西长多观，它的界  
道墙，千人起筑海实，两千壮叫国世  
一城两国在修山关，万雄们都中建  
有的的是中手上起峪一分人长长的  
国长城前只山东嘉是十以里名的  
中最城以两高城至度里，所万万闻

3. 毅可民毅困顶闻现  
的，都人的种山界城  
强的，国强的各的世长  
坚，困中，坚了伏了里  
有，何服，用服起筑万  
要，任克去克在修的  
只，力以过力难，上名

的设在，中强上种好。  
强建难，路上中强上种好。  
坚了困难，道学用发的文  
用服种主义，我们该服上中  
们克服各主我，应该服上中  
他力的会进也，力语难，把  
在毅上社迈文毅和困

4. 游是很城向雄过吹很牢里国的  
我们天人长上，分经风还很万中慧  
前，我的到山十然的墙还到，是智  
以长游们在伸城多，但根的人  
久了日，我筑方长千打整，我城动  
不览假多。修远伟。两雨完固。长劳

# 结晶。

5. 假喜到些向洋去几筑约十一着看表东一的。  
日欢郊起远有看十那一丈天地看现西定十  
的游区起伏方时看层些百我我球世不这十  
时览去的扩展到些的高大丈真可游界同分  
候有看大展到些的建宽希以览上时的有  
我时看山的城一大筑约望环一各代游意  
最候那和海里百建高五有绕周种的览思

5.

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

you have completed the exercise, check your work against the model translations follow.

Key - Model Translations:Paragraph 1:

In ancient times, / in order to / resist / enemy / attacks, / China /  
built / several / strategically important / places / into / passes. /  
Several thousand years / have passed / until now / (and) because of /  
the changes / of the times, / some / of the passes / needed to be /  
strengthened; / some / of the passes / needed to be / expanded; / still /  
other / strategically important / places / needed to be / built / into /  
new / passes: / China / has already / (further) solved / all / these /  
problems / one by one. / In order to / make it so that / these / passes /  
could / mutually / connect, / China / is also / preparing / to connect /  
what in the past was / section- / -by-section / of small / roads. / (53/75)

Paragraph 2:

China / has / the world's / longest / wall. / More than / 2000 years /  
ago / this / wall / was built / on undulating / high mountains /  
by the Chinese / people / relying on / their two hands. / The Great Wall /  
begins / in the east / at Shanhaiguan / and ends / in the west /  
at Jiayuguan, / and the actual / length / is more than / 12,000 /  
"li." / It is extremely / grand / and magnificent, / so / people / all /  
call / it / the Great Wall (10,000 "li" long wall). / China's /  
Great Wall / is a world- / -famous / construction. / (40/57)

Paragraph 3:

Only if / one has / staunch / fortitude / can one / overcome / any /  
1 1 1 2 1 1 1  
difficulty. / In the past, / the Chinese / people / overcame / various /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
difficulties / with / staunch / fortitude, / and on undulating /  
1 1 1 2 2  
mountain peaks / (they) built / the world- / -famous / Great Wall. / Now, /  
1 2 1 2 2 1  
with / staunch / fortitude / they / have overcome / various kinds of /  
1 1 2 1 1 1  
difficulties / in (re)construction / and have advanced / on the road /  
1 1 2 1  
to socialism. / In / our studies / we should / also / overcome / various /  
1 1 1 1 1 1 1  
difficulties / in pronunciation / and / grammar / with / staunch /  
1 1 1 1 1 1  
fortitude / and learn / Chinese / well. / (42/60)  
2 1 1 1

Paragraph 4:

Not long / ago / we / visited / the Great Wall. / That day was / a holiday, /  
2 1 1 2 2 1 2  
and there were many / people / sight-seeing. / We saw that / the Great Wall /  
1 1 2 1 2  
was built / atop / high mountains / extending / into (toward) / the distance, /  
2 1 1 2 1 2  
and it was very / magnificent. / Although / the Great Wall / has undergone /  
2 1 1 2 1  
more than / 2000 years / of weathering, / however, / the wall / is still /  
1 1 2 1 1 1  
very much / intact / (and) the foundation / is still / very solid. / We /  
1 2 2 1 2 1  
felt that / the Great Wall / is truly / the crystallization / of the wisdom /  
1 2 1 2 2  
of the Chinese / laboring (working) / people. / (43/61)  
1 1 1

Paragraph 5:

On / holidays, / I like / best / to go sightseeing. / Sometimes / I go to /  
the suburbs / to look at / those / big / undulating / mountains / and /  
the ocean / extending / toward / the distance. / Sometimes / I go / into /  
the city / to look at / those / buildings / that are more than / 100 /  
stories / tall. / Those / big buildings / are about / 100 / "zhang" /  
tall / and about / 50 / "zhang" / wide. / I really / hope that / one day /  
I can / go on a tour / around / the world / and see / various / things /  
in the world / that manifest / different / ages. / This kind of / excursion /  
would certainly be / extremely / interesting. / (56/79)